



92/18

5.3.10

Free State



OF SOUTH AFRICA



DEPARTMENT OF BANTU ADMINISTRATION AND
DEVELOPMENT

Ethnological Publications

No. 51

The Tribes of the Districts of Taung and Herbert

by

P.-L. Breutz

Price/Drys R2.00

Overseas postage R2.55

postage.

10.11.1968
R2.00
10.11.1968
10.11.1968

The Government Printer, Pretoria

1968



C O N T E N T S.
GENERAL INTRODUCTION

	page	par.
1 Boundaries.	1	1
2 Extent.	4	9
3 Control.	5	11
4 Geography.	11	22
Table No. I. Rainfall.	13	25
5 Early European explorers and historical events.	14	31
Chronological list of events.	21	47
6 Early and present inhabitants.	23	48
Rockengravings	24	51
Korana Hottentots.	28	56
Batlhaping.	31	64
Table II Genealogies of chiefs	42	91
7 Urban Locations.	43	92
8 Numbers and distribution of the Bantu population.	44	95
Table III population figures for various years.	45	97
Table IV population figures for all races	47	98
Table V Births and deaths register	49	100
Table VI Distribution of population by classification of land	51	101
Table VII Bantu languages spoken	54	102
Table VIII Relation between ages and marital condition	56	103
Table IX Literacy	58	104
9 Synoptical table of population in relation to land and stock table X	59	105
10 Land and farms.	61	107
11 Tswana agriculture	68	121
Table XI Irrigation farming	77	130
Table XII Agricultural Census	78	-
Schmidtsdrift Reserve	80	145
12 Social customs	82	149
13 Beliefs, Churches and Schools	84	154
Table XIII Churches	85	158
Table XIV Schools	85	160

Table XIII Churches	page	par
Table XIV Schools	85	158
	85	160
14 Description of settlement, material culture and dress	90	162
15 Economics	91	165
16 Health	93	168
17 Sources and Literature	95	173

TRIBES OF THE DISTRICTS

BATLHAPING BA GA PHUDUHUTSWANA, at Taung, Chief Mankuroane	99	174
do. at Matlapaneng headman R.S. Rashupe	121	218
do. at Makassa, Location No. 21, headman Thataetsile Smash Mankuruane	127	240
do. at Marubiseng in Modimong Location, headman Stanley Mahura Mankuroane	131	257
do. at Mogopela, headman Brown L.K. Mahura	135	271
do. at Kgobadi, headman Jerry Motlhamare Mahura	141	290
do. at Mapoitsile in Magogong Area, headman Kobane Kingsley Saku	145	304
do. Smousstat, headman B. Stanley Smous	151	321
BATLHAPING MIXED at Banksdrift or Tlapeng, headman Frank Molema Mabatsane	155	334
BATLHAPING and BATSHWENG, Vaaltyn Location No. 33, headman Piet Olehile Seoloseng	159	345
BATLHAPING BA GA MARUMO at Thamasi kwa or Buxton Location, headman John Têiyo Ganoke	163	361
BATLHAPING BA GA PHUDUHUTSWANA at Mokgareng I, headman Kebalepile Stanley Ntokwe	169	377

BATLHAPING BA GA MAIDI at Manthe, chief Walter Letsiê Motlhabani	page	par.
	173	393
do. Local headman for Manthe, George Kgantlapane	191	431
do. at Molelema, headman Mogonono Kgantlapane	193	437
do. at Matseng or Tweelingspan headman Ezekiel Mantlong Kgantlapane	197	448
do. at Tlapeng, headman Morwa Christopher Senwedi	200	455
BAROLONG, HURUTSHE, TLHAPING MIXED, Lower Majeakgoro, headman Lechute Elias Pampier	203	469
TLHAPING, ROLONG, SOUTH-SOTHO, Upper Majeakgoro, headman Henry Maleshane Ntshekang	211	496
TLHAPING, ROLONG, HURUTSHE, TSHWENG at Sekging, headman Stoffel Ntshekang Sehêmo	215	509
KGATLA, HURUTSHE, NGWAKETSE, TLHAPING, at Seoding, headman Galotlhomelwe Nathaniel Babuseng	219	526
TLHAPING MIXED, at Mmamutle, headman George Kgama Mothibi	223	541
do. at Driefontein or Madipelesa, headman Moemise Frans Seleka	229	562
do. at Shaleng, headman David L. Mothelesi	233	573
do. at Majeng, headman B. Frank Malanoka	237	585
BATLHAPING BA GA PHUDUHUTSWANA and HURUTSHE at Schmidtsdrift Reserve No. 6, chief Klein Daniel Gaolaiwe Sehunêlô	243	602
BATLHAPING BA GA MOLEHE and others, at Baviaanskrantz, Location No. 1 & 2, Headman K. Thomas Leburu	247	617

BATLHAPING BA GA MAIDI and others,
at Boomplaats Location No. 3,
headman M. Coenraad Setlhodi
("Cedraas")

251 628

BATLHAPING MIXED, TSATSING,
KGATLA KWENA
Schmidtsdrift Location No. 4,
Headman M. Hendrik Petlo)

255 641

BATLHAPING BA GA MAIDI and others,
Plaatdrift Location No. 5
headman Petrus K. Senye Senye

259 653

Index

262 -

Map

1 Boundaries

1 The Crown Colony of British Bechuanaland, which was established by a proclamation of 1885, consisted of the districts or "electoral divisions" of Mafeking, Vryburg, Kuruman, Taung and Gordonia. The magisterial district of Taung was first established by British Bechuanaland Proclamation No.2 of 1885 and first defined by British Bechuanaland Proclamation No.3 and later by British Bechuanaland Proclamation No.60 of 1889, sect. 3. After the Crown Colony of British Bechuanaland had been transferred to the Cape Colony by Act 41 of 1895, dated 11.11.1895, the district of Taung was liquidated by Cape Proclamation No. 149, Government Gazette dated 28.4.1896. It became part of the fiscal Division of Vryburg and comprised Field Cornetcies 7 and 8 of that Division. The Native Reserves were included in the field cornetcies and the Field Cornet's powers were vested in the Inspectors of Reserves. In 1907 the Natives protested against the inclusion of the reserves in the field cornetcies. By Proclamation No.68 of 1899 Taung was re-established and declared an independent magisterial district and the district boundaries of Taung were redefined in this Proclamation. Field cornetcies no longer existed according to Act 16 of 1914. Taung was included in the district of Barkly West according to Gov. Notice 2041 of 27.11.1927. In terms of Act No.27 of 1935, sect.2, land was exchanged, namely a portion of the Native Reserve, Voorspoed (11 379 morgen valued at £22 758) was exchanged for certain farms (11 386 morgen valued at £ 32 962). By Government Notice 2275 of 1948 and Government Notice 2233 of 21.10.1949 certain parts were exised from Taung district.

2 According to the Proclamation No.68 of 1899 the boundaries of Taung Magisterial district were as follows: "An area extending from the north-eastern beacon of the Taung Native Reserve, common to that Reserve and the farm Rosenberg, on the Transvaal Border, eastwards and southwards along the Transvaal

Border to the southernmost beacon of the farm Trinidad, on the Griqualand West Border, to the south-western beacon of the farm Doornfontein; thence in a northerly direction, along the western boundaries of and including the farms Doornfontein, Nyatsi Fontein, Middelfontein, Knoffelfontein, Latlakani, Karee Boom, Wilde-Als-Fontein, and Graspan, to the north-western beacon of the last named farm; thence in an easterly direction, along the Northern boundaries of and including the farms Graspan, Mochuie, Theka, Steekdoorns, Ghain, Karikia, Mayong, Letsilabelung Kgatsang, and the Taung Native Reserve, to the point first named.

3 After 1949 and the above mentioned Government Notice effecting changes of the boundaries, the local limits of the magisterial district of Taung are as follows: "From the northernmost beacon of the farm Middeland (Vr.Q.8-34) in a south easterly direction along the boundaries of the following properties so as to include them within this district, viz. the said Middeland, Vygeboomsvalakte (Vr.Q.8-24), Verona (Vr.Q.6-24), Taung Native Reserve, Highlands (Tau.F.I-2), Modimo (Tau.F.I-1), Pender (Tau.Q.I-1), Killarney (Tau.Q.I-2), Home Rule (Tau.Q.I-3), Tweeling Plan (Tau.F.I-4), Pannure (Tau.F.I-5), Kokuming (Tau.F.I-6), Kopje Enkel (Tau.Q.I-4) and the said Taung Native Reserve to the middle of the Harts River; thence in a southerly direction down the middle of the Harts River to the point where it meets the northeastern boundary of Majeng Location (Act No.27 of 1913), common to it and Lot No.I, Vaal Harts Settlement B (Diagram No.2342/43); thence in a south-easterly direction along the boundaries of the following properties so as to include them within this district viz., the said Majeng Location (Act No.34 of 1927), Mamutla Location, Driefontein Location, Kook Fontein (Ba.W.Q.I-3), Nooitgedacht (Ba.W.Q.22-18), 16 n o (Ba.W.Q.16-23), 15 n o (Ba.W.Q.14-35), 15 o p (Ba.W.Q.5-39), 15 p q (Ba.W.Q.14-2), 16 p q (Ba.W.Q.6-10), Hoekplaats (Ba.W.Q.23-15), the said Taung Native Reserve, Sterkfontein (Vr.Q.6-1), Bavians-Kloof (Vr.Q.8-38), Roodepoort (Vr.Q.8-33), and the above mentioned Middeland to the beacon first named.

4 By Proclamation No.2027 of 7.10.1955 the local

limits of the District of Taung were decreased by the exclusion therefrom of farms No. 22 (Cornforth Hill), No.23 (Anthorn), also known as Thompson's Farms, No. 33 and No.34. These farms became part of the neighbouring district of Warrenton.

5 The Native Reserves were defined by British Bechuanaland Act No. 41 and Proclamation No.220 of 1895. A preliminary description of the reserves and claims to land is also given in the "Report of the Commissioners appointed to determine land claims and to the effect of a land settlement in British Bechuanaland" in 1886 (London). In October 1885 this Land Commission under Captain Levenson visited all the Native villages and European farms and also had its headquarters at Taung. The area for the investigation comprised a block with 10 Native areas in and around Taung, Kuruman and Bothithong (Vryburg). In this block were the natural areas of the Tlhaping and Tlharo tribes. The area is now artificially cut into three districts, namely Taung, Kuruman and Vryburg. This area was then bounded by the Transvaal in the east, Griqualand West in the south, the Republic of Stellaland in the North and stretches to the Kuruman mountains (Langeberg) in the west. At this time Phokwane was still part of the Tlhaping country. The ten Native reserves then covered 1183 sq.miles and had a population of 27 265 souls (Tswana), which gave an average of 14 morgen (27.8 acres) per head of population. At Taung residential erven had been granted to a white population by the chief.

6 The present Native Reserves of Majeakgoro, Sekging, Seoding, Mamutla, Driefontein, Shaleng and Majeng, which for some time were part of the district of Barkly West, and the Schmidtsdrift Reserve in the present District of Herbert were formerly Griqua country and belonged to Griqualand West. By Griqualand West Proclamation No.67 of 1871 (27.Oct.) Chief Nicolas Waterboer and the Griqua tribe were declared British subjects and their territory British Territory. The boundaries of the Territory or Province of Griqualand West were set forth by Proclamation No.20 of 1873. By Cape Act No.39 of 1877 Griqualand West was annexed to the Cape Colony. By that time some baTlharo and baTlhaping had moved into the Griqua country, married Griqua

women, and other tribesmen followed them into their new settlements. This movement had started with the Tlhaping Chief Mothibi (1816-1835) and later some relatives of the house of the baTlharo chief followed.

7. The following Locations in the former Barkly West District were created and defined in Schedule A of the Native Land Act No.27 of 1923: Majeakgoro Location incl. Sekhing, Shalen, Seoding, the Farms NW 45, NW42, NW43, i.e. incl. Driefontein, Mamutla and Majeng (HV 32, HV 39). Under the Schedule of Act No. 34 of 1927, par. 3, the following farms in the former district of Barkly West were added to the beforementioned farms: HV 60, HV 62, and a portion Highland of HV 63.

8 The area of the Schmidtsdrift Location was created and defined as a Scheduled Area by Act No. 27 of 1913. The area consisted of the Locations: Baviaanskrantz, Boomplaats, Schmidtsdrift, Plaatdrift and Sehunêlô ("Sivonel") farms R30, R31, and R25. By Schedule to Act No.18 of 1936 the farm Sehunêlô (Sivonel') R24 was added as Released Area No.11. The local area of the Schmidtsdrift Reserve was vested in the South African Native Trust in terms of Section 6 (1)(b) of Act No.18 of 1936. The Schmidtsdrift area of the magisterial district of Herbert is attached to the Native Commissioner Kimberley from 1.12.1948 by Proclamation No.287/48, dd. 23.9.1948.

2 Extent

9 The district of Taung as defined above in 1955 covers an area of 1178 sq. miles. The extent of the Native area is 280,624 morgen and individual Reserves is given in par. 107-120. The district of Taung stretches about 60 miles from North to South and 50 miles from West to East.

10 The district of Kimberley is 1764 sq. miles and the district of Herbert 2960 sq. miles in extent. The Native area in the district Herbert, viz. the Schmidtsdrift Reserve, is 38,642 morgen or 128 sq. miles in extent.

3 Control

11 The magistrate's court was established by British Bechuanaland Proclamation No.2 of 1885 and its jurisdiction was defined by British Bechuanaland Proclamation No.60 of 1889 and par.11 of Act 41 of 1895. The laws of the Cape Colony were made applicable to British Bechuanaland by Act 19 of 1896, however, the laws of the above mentioned Act 41 remained in force and, especially various sections of the Schedule to Proclamation 2 of 1885 dealing with Native jurisdiction (sect. 31 and 32) were not abolished by the new Act. According to Proclamation No.2 of 1885, Native chiefs in British Bechuanaland have original and exclusive jurisdiction in all civil cases between Natives of their own tribes respectively; but in all civil cases between Europeans, or between a European and a Native, or between Natives of different tribes the resident Magistrate of the District has jurisdiction, subject always to the right of appeal as provided in the Proclamation. In British Bechuanaland, and which is not the case in the Transvaal, the chief's jurisdiction according to the mentioned Act is "personal" and not "territorial". Native Chiefs in British Bechuanaland, acc. to Proclamation No. 2 of 1885, shall have criminal jurisdiction according to the Native laws of their respective tribes, other than cases of rape, murder, culpable homicide, pretended witchcraft and theft from other tribes; provided, always, that such chiefs shall in no case be permitted to inflict any punishment involving death, mutilation or grievous bodily harm. Other sections of the Proclamation No.2 of 1885 subsisting after the annexation of British Bechuanaland dealt with circumcision (sect. 8) procuring same without consent of parents (sect.9), witchcraft (sect.10 and 11), prohibition of compulsory marriages (sect.41) registration of marriages (sect.42 and 44), issue of passes to Natives leaving the Territory (sect.48), passes to Natives entering the Territory (sect.50) etc.

12 Act No.38 of 1927, as amended by Act No.9 of 1929, confirmed the right of Native chiefs having jurisdiction in British Bechuanaland, with the exception of section 12(1) saying that a Native chief shall not have power to determine any question

of nullity, divorce or separation arising out of any marriage. The right to appeal as provided in Proclamation No. 2 of 1885 was amended by Act No.7 of 1924, saying that the appeal from the decision of a Native chief to a court composed of the magistrate of the district and of such chief shall lie to the court of the magistrate of the district from whose decision there shall be a further appeal to the Griqualand West Local Division of the Supreme Court of South Africa. In the district of Taung two chiefs of the Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana and the ba ga Maidi had civil and criminal jurisdiction by virtue of section 21 of Act No.38 of 1927. The headmen in the district had no jurisdiction under this section 21 until the establishment of the Bantu Authorities, when those headmen who are the chairmen of communal tribal authorities received judicial powers, i.e. since 1958.

13 Taung district originally fell under the jurisdiction of the Chief Native Commissioner of the Ciskei (King Williams Town). By Government Notice No.501, dated 7.2.1936, a Chief Native Commissioner's post was approved for the Northern Areas and all the districts of British Bechuanaland were included in his area. In 1940 the office of this Chief Native Commissioner was suspended by the War Economy Office. About 1947 the office of a Chief Native Commissioner for the Western Areas, to which the districts of the former British Bechuanaland now belong, was opened in Potchefstroom.

14 The following Magistrates were stationed at Taung, appointed on the following dates (some names are not clearly readable in the district's records):

John Smith Moffat	16.11.1890
Stanley Lowe	(died 11.8.1893)
C.R. Chalmers	12.8.1893
J.A. Ashburnham	8.2.1894
Charles Ranstone	1.7.1896
P. Bradshaw	1.2.1903
G. Tennent	2.6.1903
J.B.N. Miles	22.12.1904
E.N. Gnayson M.A.	12.5.1905
W.M. Roberts	19.12.1905
F. Kings	22.12.1905
E. Middleurck	4.12.1907
T.H. Roux	date not recorded

P. Wilton	9.9.1908
M.J. Lyne	13.11.1908
D.A. Swart	20.4.1908
J.T. Harpen	18.3.1911
S.P. Court?	4.9.1911
V.I. Harpen	10.2.1912
D.A. Steward	23.2.1912
V.I. Harpen	16.3.1912
W. Harmer	5.5.1912
C.E. Kidges	11.11.1915
Sidney Charles Brown	1.10.1928
J.B. Muller	1.5.1929
Winstanly	1.9.1929
J.B. Muller	1.9.1931
Henry Jac. Wolfaard	1.3.1933
A.A. Burge	1.7.1933
J. Boysen	1.5.1934
F.H. Ferreira	1.11.1935
G.B. Cunningham	17.11.1937-31.3.1943
J.M. Rothmann	1.4.1943-28.7.1945
A.I. Turton	29.7.1945-6.1.1947
W.J.M. Norton	7.1.1947-1.1.1952
R.A. Boisen	1.1.1952- 1.4.1955
O.G. Gold	1.4.1944 -1.1.1958
A.M. Blakeway	1.1.1958--29.4.1959
V.S.S. King	30.4.1959-28.9.1959
V.R. Zietsmann	1.10.1959 - 30.9.1963
F.H. de J. Brownlee	1.10.1963- 30.4.1965
P.I.M. van Wyk	1.5.1965 - 30.6.1966
M.J. Verkuil	1.7.1966.

15 On 1st May, 1934, the control of the district Taung was transferred from the Department of Justice to the Department of Native Affairs, with a 1st grade Native Commissioner. On 1st November 1935 this grade was changed to 2nd grade Native Commissioner, and from 1.2.1936 Taung was controlled by an Assistant Magistrate or Assistant Native Commissioner. Since 1959, Taung has been administrated by a Senior Grade Bantu Affairs Commissioner.

16 From the beginning of the administration, as also mentioned in the Report of the Land Commission of 1885, four chiefs were officially recognised as chiefs, namely: Botlasitse, Jantjie, Mankuroane and Kgantlapane. The chiefs were asked by the administration to submit the names of their headmen for recognition, similar to the system of appointed, headman of the Transkei. In British Bechuanaland they were mere clan heads with the functions of

Chief's councillors. This type of headman was not recognised in the Transvaal. The system of recognising headmen may have weakened the authority of the chiefs. However, in a "Memorandum on the Administration of Native Affairs in British Bechuanaland" of 1908, the functioning of the chieftainships in the district of Taung was described as very doubtful even for the most elementary administration and jurisdiction, and especially since chief Molale drank himself to insanity and chief Kgantapane was a bed-ridden syphilitic. When the Cape Laws were made applicable to British Bechuanaland the Tswana chiefs and their advisers insisted in keeping their administrative laws unchanged as laid down in Procl. 2 of 1885. They were suspicious of the policy which Sir George Grey had recommended in 1856. This policy commended itself to the members of the Commission on Native Laws and Custom which reported in 1883 and had broadly speaking been adopted in the Transkeian Territories, except that Parliament still further restricted the powers of Chiefs.

17 A Tswana tribe of the olden days usually had natural clan-headmen (dikgosana) who held hereditary posts and formed the main body of the tribal council being the chief's advisers. In 1815, when all Tlhaping tribes were still united in one tribe, such a clan-system had existed at Dithakong (district of Vryburg) and John Campbell mentions "perhaps 50 wards having each a headman". However when chief Mothibi (ruled 1816-1835) had enlarged the tribal land to such an extent that one chief could not control it anymore, he subdivided his land and gave the portions to his sons and brothers. The tribe did not live long enough at Taung that real clans could have developed in the course of history and therefore we find territorial subdivisions prevailing. If a tribe has territorial subdivisions, the heads of such divisions are usually relatives of a chief, as is also customary here. Parts of other Tlhaping sections had also migrated into the Taung area, such as the ba ga Marumo and ba ga Molehe, who had their own hereditary heads. For the two larger chieftainships headmen were officially recognised, i.e. 13 for the Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana and 4 for the Tlhaping ba ga Maidu. Besides such official headmen the Phuduhutswana chief appointed a further 23 unrecognised tribal

headmen, most of them now sub-ordinate to the official headmen. Through official recognition the Government headmen gained in importance and the tribal headmen were degraded to sub-headmen. These Government headmen were, however, not "elected under supervision of the Native Commissioner by a vote of all taxpayers", as can be read in literature. Such procedures for appointments may have happened in the Locations of the former Barkley West district, but are not the rule, because here the chieftainships ended with the Langeberg Rebellion of 1896. Here most of the headmen were appointed by the administration regardless of who ruled over people who were not even of the same tribe. Foreigners who were appointed to control the local population had naturally no authority over people who were not interested to follow them.

18 Nowadays in Taung the Tribal Authority council is asked to consult the public as to who must become headman, and where possible the hereditary system is followed or the headmanship reverts to lineages of the chief's house. The Tribal Authority Council should only recommend a headman where the tribes have no chiefs or where the council is composed of advisers with the traditional standing of Chief's councillors, otherwise the recommended headman's authority may be meaningless. According to custom it is a matter for the chief to decide who should become headman and certainly not for the public. Government headmen have no jurisdiction, unless they take the place of a chief as chairman of a Communal Tribal Authority. Government headmen should approach the Bantu Affairs Commissioner through their chiefs or chairmen of the Tribal Authority, unless they have purely technical office matters to discuss. Some headmen may not have followed this procedure because the late chief at Taung was disinterested in tribal affairs, as erroneously described as a rule in Literature.

19 In 1958 Bantu Authorities were established in this district: the Baphuduhutswana Tribal Authority under Government Notice No. 376 of 1958. The ba ga Maidu Tribal Authority under the same Gov. Notice, the Majeakgoro Tribal Authority, the Mamutla Tribal Authority, both under Government Notice No. 1592/58.

20 The four Tribal Authorities are united in a Taung Regional Authority, consisting of a council of 16 members. The chairman was the late Chief Thapama Rabodigelo Mankuroane. However, William Mogorosi (with the official consent of the Minister of Bantu Administration) was appointed as the deputy of the Chief to perform the Chief's duties. The councillors of the Regional Authority are as follows:

for Phuduhutšwana Tribal Authority:

- 1) Chief Kg. Scotch Mankuroane
- 2) Epile William Mogorosi, acting as deputy chairman of the Regional Authority.
- 3) Headman Tsbipo Stanley Mangwegape
- 4) Headman Brown Lekula Kg. Mahura
- 5) Headman Stanley Kebalepile Ntokwe
- 6) Headman John Thēiō Ganoke
- 7) Mosimanekgosi Lucas Jebetle
- 8) Lawrence Dimbazana

for Baga-Maidi Tribal Authority:

- 9) Chief Walter Letsiē Motlhabani
- 10) Headman Hezekiel Kgantlapane
- 11) Headman Benjamin M. Kgantlapane
- 12) George Ntlhoisang Kgatlapane
- 13) Frank Senwedi

for Majeakgoro Communal Authority:

- 14) Headman Elias Lechute Pampier, Chairman
- 15) Headman Galotlhomelwe Nathaniel Babuseng from Seoding

for Mamutla Communal Authority:

- 16) Headman George Kgamē Mothibi, Chairman
- 17) Headman Tanaka Solomon Marumoagae, of Driefontein.

21 Since the establishment of the Tswana Territorial Authority (Gov. Notice No. 585, dated 21.4.1961) the district of Taung is represented on the Territorial Council with 5 members: Chief K.S. Mankuroane, chief W. Motlhabani, Headman Stanley Ntokwe, Headman Pampier and Headman Marumoagae.

4 GEOGRAPHY

22 The Harts River valley contributes most to the geographical character of the dry district of Taung. The river enters the district in the North-eastern corner, and cuts a narrow gorge in the plateau which has an altitude of 4000 feet above sealevel. The Valley, several miles in width, runs from North to South through the district at an altitude of 3500 feet. Along the middle of this valley below 3500 ft. altitude runs the Mokgara, also called Dry Harts, or Leeuw Spruit, which is a tributary to the Harts river joining it 3 miles West of Taung. Along the foot of the hills in the east runs the Vaal-Harts-Canal conducting water for irrigation purposes from the Vaal River Dam. Below Taung the waters of the Harts River are used for the Taung Irrigation Scheme. On the western side of the district an unbroken escarpment rises gradually to the Plateau with an altitude of 4000 ft. above sea level and more. The names, mostly Tswana names, of many small spruits running towards the Harts River system are given in the description of the various tribes and indicated on the accompanying map.

23 For this district place names are often spelt wrong and therefore the following list of places names is given here.

Place name	Old spelling or wrong spelling
Dikguting	Dikoteng
Dipuding	
Itireleng	
Kgantsang	
Kgibitswana	Kebetwane
Kgobadi	
Kokomeng	
Longaneng	
Loselong	
Maditung spruit	
Maganeng	
Majeng	Mayeng
Majeakgoro	Mayeakgoro
Malapitse	
Maphoitsile	
Marubising	Marubiseng
Modimong	
Modutung	
Mogopela	Mogopella
Mokasa	Mokassa
Molale	Molala
Molēlēma	
Mothanthanyane	Matantanyane
Motlhabeng (in Mokgareng area)	
Motlhware	

Motsweding
Pitsong
Pitswane
Pudumong
Sedukung Molelema
Sekging
Setlhabeng
Setlheng
Setlhong
Seweding, Seoding
Shaleng
Thamasikwa
Thomeng
Tlapeng (stone)
Tshobay
Tshokonyane spruit
Tshoseng
Tshowe (pan)

Mocwedding
Picong
Pudimoe
Sekin

Seodin
Shalen
Thabasikwa
Thoming
Tlhaping (fish)
Chobeng

Choseng
Choe, Chew

24 The district gets summer rains, although the rains often come later than in the Transvaal. The average annual rainfall, measured since 1898/1900 at Taung for 36 years was usually about 17 inches. In the north the annual rain is slightly less and in the west it is slightly more than 17 inches. 85% of the total are thunderstorms between November and April. These are succeeded by dry and hot periods. Dry and hot winds from the Kalahari i.e. from the NW, are responsible for a strong evaporation. The following figures may indicate how different the annual average rainfall is:

1948	17.48 inch
1949	17.57 inch
1950	23.08 inch
1951	16.42 inch
1952	19.77 inch
1953	18.88 inch
1954	15.34 inch
1955	24.30 inch
1956	26.60 inch
1957	24.90 inch
1958	18.86 inch
1959	13.00 inch
1960	21.83 inch
1961	21.85 inch
1962	16.34 inch
1963	22.75 inch

25 If the average annual rainfall for these years is higher than over a longer period before, namely 19.93 inch, this is due to a few years with very high rainfall and should not be regarded as an average, though it appears that the rainfall has increased slightly if we take the whole period of

60 years. For the average monthly rainfall see table No.1. The rainfall is irregular and droughts frequently occur. Temperatures are extreme in summer and winter. Summer temperatures sometimes reach 106°F. In Winter frost often occurs during the nights while day temperatures are moderate.

TABLE NO. I

Station No	Rainfall				Taung, 1959 dry year.
	2306	2298	2285H	3620*	
Altitude in ft.	3598	3668	4450	-	
Period of years before 1935	34-36	21-23	10-11	5-7	
October	0.90	0.75	0.83	0.75	0.41
November	1.60	1.64	1.63	1.31	0.63
December	2.25	2.26	2.67	1.46	3.83
January	3.01	2.63	3.37	2.26	2.84
February	3.15	3.06	2.53	4.81	1.76
March	3.25	3.54	3.74	3.37	0.89
April	1.37	1.39	1.29	0.82	1.62
May	0.48	0.67	0.47	0.31	0.43
June	0.18	0.08	0.02	0.11	0.10
July	0.14	0.22	0.12	0.52	0.31
August	0.18	0.23	0.30	0.29	-
September	0.49	0.43	0.62	0.61	-
Annual Total	17.00	16.90	17.59	16.57	12.82
No of days	45	47	54	40	

Key to rainfall station Numbers

2306	Taung
2298	Dry harts or Pudumong
2285H	Bawood, West of the district
3630*	Dunbarlow do.

the district is proclaimed as drought stricken.

26 The railway line from the Cape to Rhodesia runs through the Irrigation Scheme of the district and parallel to this line runs a tarred road down to Warrenton and Kimberley. From Taung a private railway line of the Northern Lime Company branches off to Norlim and the lime works in the Thomeng area. The railway grants were made in British Bechuanaland to the B.S.A. Company in 1892 (B.B. Proclamation No.199) and the railway construction to Mafeking was planned in 1894 (B.B. Proclamation No. 199). The station Pudumoe is the junction for the railway line to the Transvaal and the Reef.

Several roads run eastwards into the Transvaal and to the west a road runs to Reivilo and Kuruman. The Road from Taung to Schweizer Reneke runs through the Manthe area of the Native Reserve and from Taung there is a road running south through all the Native Locations of the magisterial district of Barkly West.

27 For soil conditions and flora see under agriculture par. 122-125.

28 Limestone and diamonds are the principal minerals obtained in the district. Limestone deposits occur all over the western parts of the district and in Majeakgoro. On the farm Thomeng lime is exploited by the Northern Lime Stone Company with a compound for the workers at Buxton. In these lime stone deposits the famous scull of the prehistoric Taung man was found.

29 Diamond operations were opened in the district of Taung by the Act No. 48 of 1882 and further regulations about diamond mining were laid down in Proclamation No. 35 of 1909. In 1914 alluvial diamond diggings were proclaimed for some farms in the district (Procl. No. 41 dd. 27.1.1914). From 1913 (the year the Land Act was passed) to 1924 prospecting for diamonds was prohibited in the Native Reserves. Regulations about prospecting for precious stones in the Taung Native Reserve were laid down in Proclamation No. 115 dd. 29.5.1924.

30 Regulations governing the mining of base metals are found in Proclamation No. 238 of 1934 according to which permits for the right to prospect can be issued by the Minister of Native Affairs. By proclamation No. 12 of 1936 the same conditions were extended to the S.A. Native Trust, land concerning all metals and minerals. People who know the Taung area assume that there are also deposits of gold, coal and mica.

5 Early European explorers and historical events

31 In the 18th century many European explorers made contact with the Griqua and Korana. The Tlhaping were known from unrecorded sources during the middle of the 18th century, but were mentioned in print for the first time by Hendrik Hop and Brink in 1761 ("Tagebuch Über die Reise des Kapitäns Hendrik Hop nach dem Gross-Namalande"). The missionaries also started their work from Griquatown. When various European explorers, traders and missionaries visited the baTlhaping, who were then still one tribe, they found them at Dithakong

near the southern boundary of the present district of Vryburg) but later, in about 1819, the aged chief Molehabangwe and his ruling son Mothibi moved to Kuruman under influence of the London Mission. During this period, Taung was not important enough to be visited, because it was only an occasional outpost for grazing. It appears, however, that in the beginning of the 18th century a "chief Tau" lived at Taung (which means: the place of Tau) or only fought a war there. This could have been the Rolong chief TAU (son of Tibela) who died at Mosita (district of Mafeking) in 1730/40 or Tau, the younger brother of the Tlhaping chief VI MOKGOSI, who was born about 1700. Most of the tribal historians suggest the first Tau. Long before this time, the Modimong area had been inhabited by the chieftainess Mohurutshe and her following for 10 - 20 years, before her sons, Motebele and Motebeyane, settled at Tshwenyane (present P.O. Enzelsberg, Distr. Marico). Some Hurutshe still live at Modimong.

32 The first visits of Europeans to the Tlhaping tribe at Dithakong ("Laatakoon") and later Maruping, Kuruman, also called "New Lattakoon" are mentioned in the book "The tribes of the Districts of Kuruman and Postmasburg" (Ethnological Publications No. 49, Gov. Printer, Pretoria 1963, paras. 26-33). Many others may have visited this part of the country, but only the following have been recorded in literature, viz. Pieter Jan Truter, Dr. William Sommerville and the missionary Anderson (1801), the landdrost of Tulbagh, Henrich Lichtenstein and the missionary and trader John Matthias Kok who settled at the Eye of Kuruman about 1800, Dr. Cowan (1807/8), Lichtenstein again (1812), W.J. Burchell (1812 when chief MOLEHABANGWE died at Dithakong), the missionary John Campbell (1816 and 1822), Rev. Hamilton and Evans (1816). Rev. Robert Moffat (1820), Andrew Geddes Bain and Biddulph (1826), Dr. Andrew Smith (1834) on his way to visit Mzilikazi, Capt. W.C. Harris (1835), A.A. Anderson (1863-88), J. Chapman (before 1868), G. Fritsch (1863-6), Gillmore Parker (before 1878), C.S. Horne, Emil Holub (1860/80) and others.

33 Rev. Robert Moffat and George Thompson gave a description of the "Mantatee hordes" who attacked the Tlhaping in 1823/4. Manthatisi was a chieftainess of the baTlōkwa in Basutoland, and several of the marauding hordes from Lesotho were therefore called Mantatees. They had followed the example of the Zulu hordes who had devastated large parts of Natal and the present Free State under Chaka. The invaders who attacked the baTlhaping were, among others, some baPhuting and baTlhakwane under

their chiefs Tshwane and Nkarahanye. Before Mzilikazi devastated the Transvaal (1828-1832 he occupied the land until 1836) there were several hordes fighting their way through the country, among them the baFokeng and others of Sebetwane 1823 who went to Northern Rhodesia, conquered the Lozi, and formed the baRotse State. There were also the baTaung from Basutoland who attacked the baRolong and were beaten off at Pitsane in 1824. Most of these hordes passed the Tlaping country and had fights with their non Tswana neighbours, such as the baThamaga or baTsatsing, and the Korana Hottentots.

34 The Tlhaping history was much influenced by the southern neighbours, the Griqua, who are a race mixture of Hottentots with Europeans. The Griqua attacked and robbed other Hottentot tribes. Even Mothibi the Tlhaping Chief, had to abandon his capital twice because of their attacks. Several Chiefs, such as Mothibi, and chiefs' relatives, married Griqua women however, and were therefore allowed to settle in Griqua country. Mothibi spent his old age in the Griqua country near Douglas. A description of the Griqua and their history is given in the above mentioned "Tribes of the districts of Kuruman and Postmasburg" (paras. 52-65 or pp. 31-37). In between the Tlhaping grazing outposts there were still hunting grounds of the Bushmen and Vaalpens, as can also be seen from Bushman place names in the westernmost part of the Phuduhutswana country e.g. Thale, Qoo etc. The last Bushmen in the area were killed by the baTlhaping, who invited them to a feast and then killed them in the cave at Taung (after c. 1870) There was also a Bushman chief, Uil, who was a neighbour of the baTlhaping in the north and north-east.

35 From 1825/30 onwards, the Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana, under Gasebone and Mahura and also the Tlhaping ba ga Maidi began to settle near Taung after temporary periods of occupation before that time. Missionaries of the London Missionary Society accompanied them to Taung from Kuruman and Rev. Ross was their first missionary. After the Korana and baTsatsing had been decimated by the attacks of marauding tribes in the decade after 1820, country in Schweizer Reneke (Mamusa) became open. Also Phokwane was baTsatsing country originally. Other Tswana tribes had also taken refuge from marauding hordes near the Vaal River at places such as Maquassi, where Methodist Missionaries were working. This mission station was burnt down by these hordes in 1824.

36 In 1857 the Boers of the Orange Free State clashed with Chief Gasebone, who was acting for Phehuetsile, and Chief Motlhabani of the Tlhaping ba ga Maidi, because of cattle raids and stealing. The cattle thieves fled to chief Mahura who refused to return the stolen cattle. Mahura was attacked and defeated by the Boers.

37 The first diamond was discovered in Hope Town in 1866. This and further discoveries along the Vaal river attracted many European adventurers. Tlhaping labourers joined them in the diggings. During this time the land in and around Taung still abounded with game and lions. In 1875 Mr. D.A. O'Reilly, a medical practitioner and trader, was asked by the chief to exterminate all the lions in the Taung area. After having done this, the tribe presented him with 10000 morgen of farm land at Thomeng, where the lime works now are. The family has had close ties with the tribe ever since, and sons of the first O'Reilly still live at Taung, Modimong and Mogopela. In 1900 there was so much game in the Taung area that on one occasion 35 buck were shot in half an hour. In 1932 the Government handed most of Thomeng back to the tribe.

38 After the discovery of diamonds some Europeans moved into the vacant country between the Tlhaping, Griqua and Korana. Stock thefts and small land disputes led to constant difficulties, especially between the baTlhaping and the Korana. In October 1881 the Tlhaping chief Mankuroane prepared for a war against David Massouw, the Korana chief at Mamusa (Schweizer Reneke), on the border of the Transvaal. Messrs. Agénor Daumas and Cecil H. King, who were the Government agents at Taung and Phokwane respectively, wanted to bring the hostilities to a peaceable settlement but were not allowed by the High Commissioner and Colonial Government to "proceed on marauding expeditions with Natives". Mankuroane at the head of a force of Natives and a few white settlers in his country, advanced to the attack of Mamusa. Many Korana were away assisting chief Moshwete of the Rolong boo Ratlou in his operations against chief Montshiwa of the Rolong boo Ratshidi. On 21 Nov. 1882 Mankuroane unsuccessfully attacked Mamusa, whence he was compelled to retreat to Taung. The Korana however, failed to capture Taung.

39 Chief Massouw, following the advice of the secretary Theodor Doms, enlisted 300 white volunteers on condition that each of them should receive a farm of 3,000 morgen in extent and a share

of the booty. In February 1882, the volunteers moved out to the Harts River and formed a laager. Mankuroane also endeavoured to enlist volunteers from the Cape Colony, but the Colonial Government issued a proclamation dictating neutrality, and hindered this. As a result ammunition could not be brought in from Griqualand West and became scarce in Taung. Botlhasitse Gasebone, a sworn enemy of Mankuroane, joined David Massouw during this war. Mankuroane and a few White men were at last compelled to give up, and on 26 July 1882 a peace treaty was signed. A Commission was appointed to beacon off boundaries between Taung, Mamusa, and Phokwane. It was found difficult to determine which was to separate the territory that Massouw was supposed to have conquered, from that which remained to Mankuroane. In the end (Dec. 1882) a commission appointed by Massouw, beacons off a line which Mankuroane consistently refused to recognise. After this the village of Vryburg was established. From here men rode out to demarcate 3,000 morgen farms. Chief Massouw designated the conquered country Stellaland and appointed a chairman and administrator for the committee of management of the white volunteers. In February 1883, 388 farms were drawn by Massouw's volunteers and their substitutes, and 32 by others, and by those of Mankuroane's volunteers to whom Mankuroane had also promised farms in Stellaland.

40 When a Cape Commission was appointed to report upon the northern boundary of Griqualand West (which adjoined the present Taung Native Reserve, while the present Reserves in the former district of Barkly West belonged to Griqualand West), Mankuroane addressed a petition to the Governor of the Cape Colony asking for annexation. Thereupon the Stellalanders and Chief Massouw requested the Transvaal Government to annex the country.

41 Along the Morokane range and Dry Harts Valley, up to 10 miles from Vryburg, baTlhaping still lived scattered over the country. In February 1884 Massouw's Korana and Southern Sotho started raids again and captured cattle of these baTlhaping. On 4 February 1884 the Boers formed a laager with the intention of attacking Taung. On 27 February 1884 the London Convention was signed and a British Protectorate was established west of the new Transvaal boundary line. Rev. John MacKenzie was appointed British Resident. Capt. R.N. Bower, the Private Secretary of the British High Commissioner, was sent to Taung to support Mankuroane. At Commando Drift he met the Adminis-

trator of Stellaland, G.J. Van Niekerk, who promised to preserve peace, and by his authority, 1300 Korana and Basuto, who were on the way to attack Taung, were sent back.

42 Under influence of Rev. Mackenzie a section of the Stellalanders pleaded to come under British Authority. A Volks-Committee of 25 members was elected to decide about the future of Stellaland. They demanded recognition of their land titles by the British Government, and desired not to be ruled by the British Resident, Mackenzie. Under these conditions the Stellaland Administrator, Van Niekerk, approved of the annexation of Stellaland to the Cape Colony in May 1884. Two factions, one in favour of the Transvaal and the other in favour of the British, created a state of affairs in Stellaland which became critical. Rev. Mackenzie was recalled to Cape Town and C.J. Rhodes was appointed acting Deputy Commissioner. Together with Capt. Bower they had a meeting with Administrator Van Niekerk about modifications of the terms. The position came to the brink of a war, and Capt. Bower was sent to Taung to prepare the place for defence. After long discussions, a Committee of the Stellalanders on one hand and C.J. Rhodes as Deputy Commissioner for Bechuanaland, on the other, signed the acceptance of the terms on 3 September 1884, by which the land titles issued by the Government of Stellaland were recognised. Hereby the northern boundary of the Taung Native Reserve remained the southern boundary of Stellaland, and the later district of Vryburg.

43 Before the arrival of European settlers the land did not mean much to Native tribes, especially to the Hottentots. According to Bantu custom, a chief was more a chief over people than over land. Since more Europeans became interested in acquiring farm land, it was felt from the beginning (i.e. in 1884) by the administration of British Bechuanaland that the land titles should be investigated in order to protect Native land by law. After the administrative system had been established by Proclamation No. 2 of 1885, the next step by the Governor of British Bechuanaland, Sir Hercules Robinson, was to appoint a Committee to investigate the land titles of all Europeans and all Native tribes (Oct. 1885). Consequently in 1886 a Land Report was presented to both houses of Parliament by Command of her Majesty. For this purpose even the huts of every Native village were counted. The Tlharo and Tlhaping population between the Transvaal and the Langeberg Mountains ("Kuruman Hills"), of the present Taung, and the

districts of Kuruman (excl. the Crown Reserve) and southern Vryburg, was recorded to be 27,265, and an area of 1183½ sq. miles was reserved for them, thus allowing 27.8 acres (=13 morgen) per person. The Taung Native Reserve was then fixed at 690 sq. miles which had a population of 19,330 persons (23.4 acres per person).

44 Before this Committee started work, Gen. Charles Warren had appointed a Committee (in August 1885) to enquire into "cases of coercion and flagrant injustice in connection with the occupation of the Batlhaping and Barolong territory by people of Stellaland". The result was that 25 farms of 3,000 morgen each were earmarked for restoration to the Natives. Not all were restored, but in the Pudumong and Dry Harts Valley in the Taung area 21,000 morgen was restored. Of Mahura's land in the district Vryburg, Klein Chwaing and Kaukwe were restored to the batlhaping. In addition certain farms, such as Groot Vaaltyn (now the area of headman Seoloseng) Vlakfontein and Konong in Kuruman, and others, have been reserved for the batlhaping.

45 The annexation of British Bechuanaland to the Cape Colony (in 1895) did not bring important changes to the Native population and their administration, mainly because they insisted on being administrated according to the British Bechuanaland laws. This was granted to them. The area of British Bechuanaland had been extended by proclamation No. 106 of 5.5.1891.

46 A year later the Rinderpest broke out over the whole of Southern Africa, and all the tribes lost the greater proportion of their stock. In Taung District the epidemic broke out on 30.9.1896. The only way to bring this epidemic to an end, was to shoot infected stock, which would have died anyhow. But this was not understood by the Natives. At Phokwane the chief killed a soldier for shooting cattle, and the Langeberg Rebellion of the Tlharo and Tlhaping against the authorities broke out. Chief Galeshiwe, Thokwe (batlhaping ba ga Marumo) and Tōtō (batlharo) were imprisoned and Phetlhu was executed. The Native Reserve at Phokwane was also consequently confiscated by Act No. 17, dated 25.8.1897. Further Proclamations dealing with this reserve were No. 339 dated 30.8.1897 and No. 1016 dated 21.4.1898 which provided for the establishment of a forest reserve in this area. In 1903 farms were set aside for occupation in the Phokwane area by Government Notice No. 919, dd. 12.10.1902. In the same year Ex-chief Galeshiwe was released from prison. In the

next year the township of Taung was established (Government Notice No. 69 of 6.8.1904),

47 The principal historical events as remembered by the batlhaping are as follows:

- 1866 Discovery of first diamonds.
- 1869 Death of Mahura; Mankuroane assumed the chieftainship.
- 1870 Botlhasitse, son of Gasebone, died.
- 1871 Conference with batlhaping at Bloemhof.
- 1874 Total eclipse of the sun.
- 1876 Great frost and snow; Cetywayo's war 1876-9.
- 1878 Griqualand West war; Phokwane expedition.
- 1879 War of Latela (Latela had stolen Tlhaping cattle).
- 1880 War of Korana Chief Pharatlhatlha from Mamusa with batlhaping.
- 1881 Military expedition to Bechuanaland.
- 1883 Death of Dr. Robert Moffat.
- 1884 British Protectorate over British Bechuanaland, C. Rhodes appointed Deputy Commissioner, expedition of General Charles Warren ("Rra-digelasi").
- 1885/6 Land Commission at work.
- 1886 Discovery of Gold on the Witwatersrand.
- 1899 Bogosing, son of Mahura, died.
- 1891 Mamokawa, a plant that came up after heavy rains;
- Death of chief Mankuroane.
- 1896 Rinderpest, in October.
- 1897 Langeberg war of the chiefs Tōtō and Galeshiwe.
- 1899 Magistrate's court established at Taung; Outbreak of Anglo-Boer War.
- 1901 Death of queen Victoria.
- 1902 Anglo-Boer war ended.
- 1905 Regulations for dog tax applied to Taung (Government Notice No. 846 of 11.8.1905)
- 1909 Regulations for hunting in British Bechuanaland (Government Notice No. 421 of 19.4.1909).
- 1910 Halley's Comet.
- 1912 Earthquake at Taung; Census of Native Population.
- 1913 Taung Native Reserve surveyed and defined as Scheduled Area (Native Land Act No. 27 of 1913); Railway Strike.
- 1914 Alluvial diamond diggings proclaimed on certain farms (Proclamation 41 of 27.1.1914)
- 1915 Donation of 339 head of cattle by batlhaping to war fund.
- 1918 End of world war, great influenza epidemic.
- 1920 Chief Molale II died.

- 1922 Miners' strike.
- 1924 Prospecting for precious stones permitted in Taung Native Reserve (Proclamation No.115 of 29.5.1924).
- 1927 Taung included in District of Barkly West (Government Notice No.2041 of 27.11.1927).
- 1929 Mashwe, son of Bogosing, died.
- 1933 Great drought.
- 1934 Great rains;
Visit of Prince George;
Regulations establishing the Vaal River Development scheme;
Visit of Minister of Native Affairs to the Reserve.
- 1938 First school at Taung established
- 1940 First Native Cattle Show at Taung; eclipse of the sun.
- 1943 Irrigation scheme plots allotted to Natives (Proclamation No.4 of 1943); Official opening of the Native Hospital in Taung.
- 1945 Visit of Minister of Native Affairs after cement furrows for irrigation were completed; End of World War II.
- 1948 Outbreak of Typhoid epidemic;
Milk Scheme started at Mokgareng;
Harvesters brought home 40,000 bags of mielies.
- 1948 New Native Affairs offices occupied; new district of Warrenton was established
- 1949 Area C was excised from Vryburg and added to Taung (88 sq. miles); Reserves and Released Areas in Barkly West were added to Taung (733 sq. miles); New area of district of Taung 1725 sq. miles in extent.
- 1950 Locations of former Barkly West became Betterment Areas (Government Notice No. 290 of 10.2.1950).
- 1956 Tribal Authorities established.
- 1957 Foot and mouth disease with quarantine for Taung, July-October. Main road from Pudumong to Warrenton completed.
- 1958 In Majeng unrest caused by agitation of African National Congress;
Kauwe Native Reserve handed over to Department of Lands;
Regional Authority for the district established.

6 Early and present inhabitants

48 One of the oldest skulls ever discovered was found at Thomeng (present lime works) in the Taung Native Reserve. It was that of a juvenile with a dental age equivalent to that of a sixteen year old human being. Prof. Raymond Dart described this specimen, which is of *Australopithecus Plesianthropus* in February 1925. Dr. Broom then made a drawing suggesting what the skull of an adult of this race might look like. His suggestion was proved to be right when the discovery of the first adult *Plesianthropus Transvalensis*, also known as "Miss Ples", was made at Sterkfontein, near Krugersdorp in 1947. The weight of the brain of this ape-man was about half of that of a modern European. The teeth of this skull were similar to human teeth. This race lived before the period when stone implements were made, but may have used bones, horn, wood, and occasionally, stones in their natural form.

49 People of ancient palaeolithic hunter cultures inhabited the banks of the Harts River. I have no information about the types of stone tools and historical layers or groupings of such cultures near Taung. These cultures were, however, of the same general pattern as that found in the Vaal River Basin, especially that of the sites on the Vaal below Warrenton. (In this connection see "Early Man in the Vaal River Basin" Archaeological Survey, Series No. VI, Government Printer Pretoria 1948.)

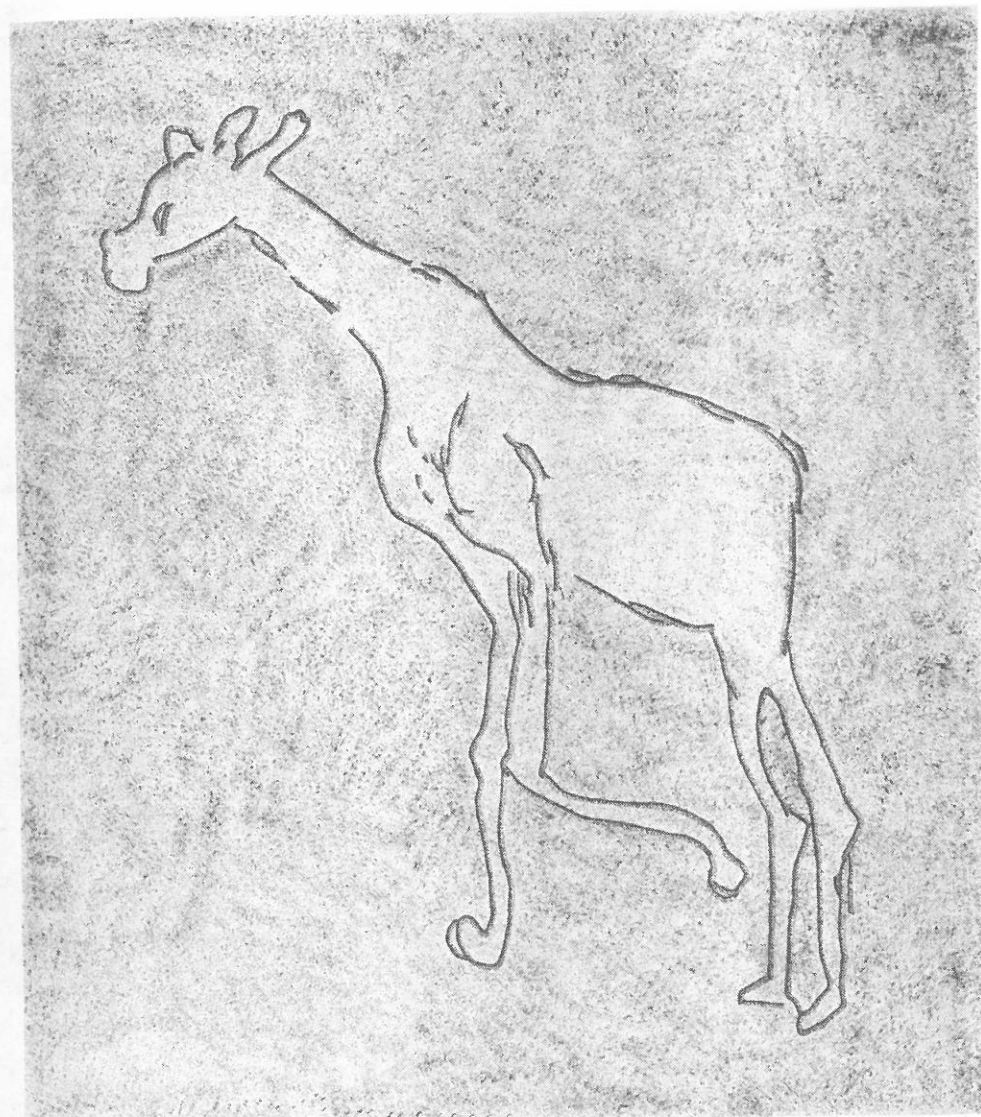
50 In the district of Taung there are no rock paintings (which are usually known as Bushman art), although the country was inhabited by Bushmen. There are, however, numerous rock engravings of older cultures in the area. They are to be found at the following places:

- (i) In the Taung district on the farms Home Rules, Killarney, and Modimong, and in the Hartz River Valley at Dikwana near Tlapeng (Manthe area).
- (ii) In the Herbert district on the farms: Atherton No. GW 13-1, Backhouse GW 3-59, Blaauwbos Drift GW 21-37, Bucklands GW 3-48, Carnavon GW 3-38, Driekops Eiland GW 24-74, Grange, Katlani OH 402, Lovedale GW 15-19, Mierkraal GW 23-15, St. Clair GW 3-60, Smithfield GW 3-44, Torquay GW 3-39, and also at Beeshoek Manganese Mines, Kheis, Kogelbeen, Nie-

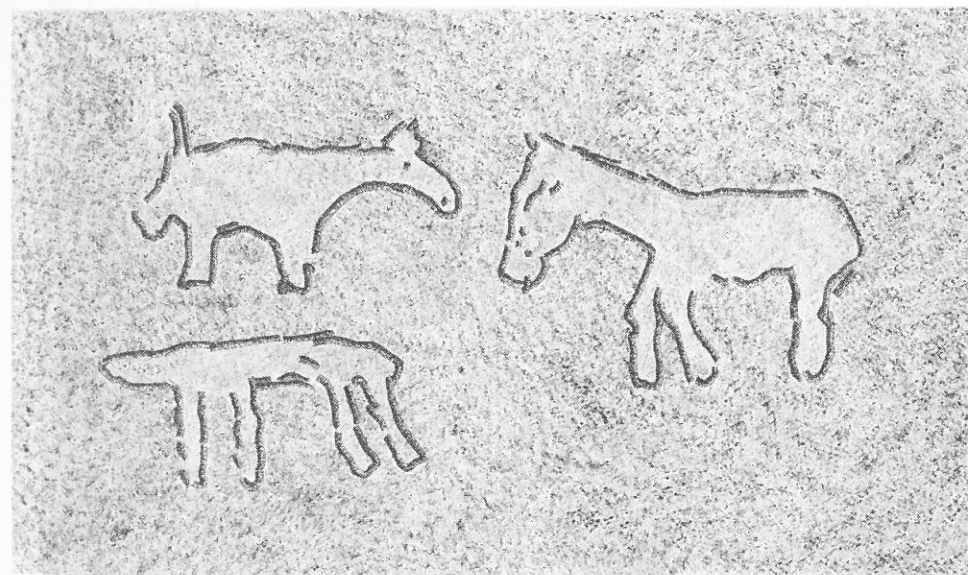
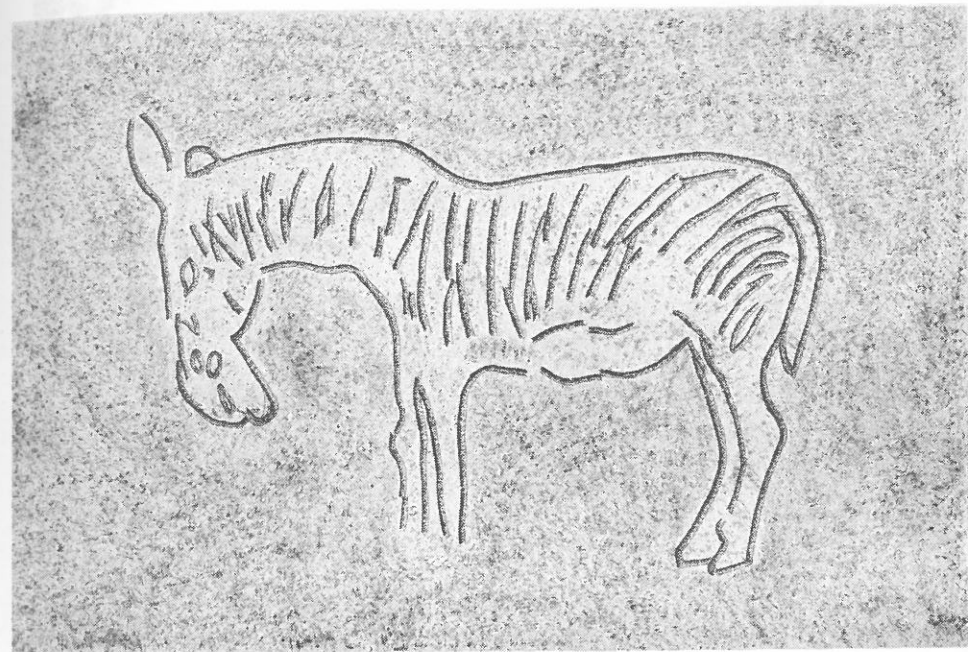
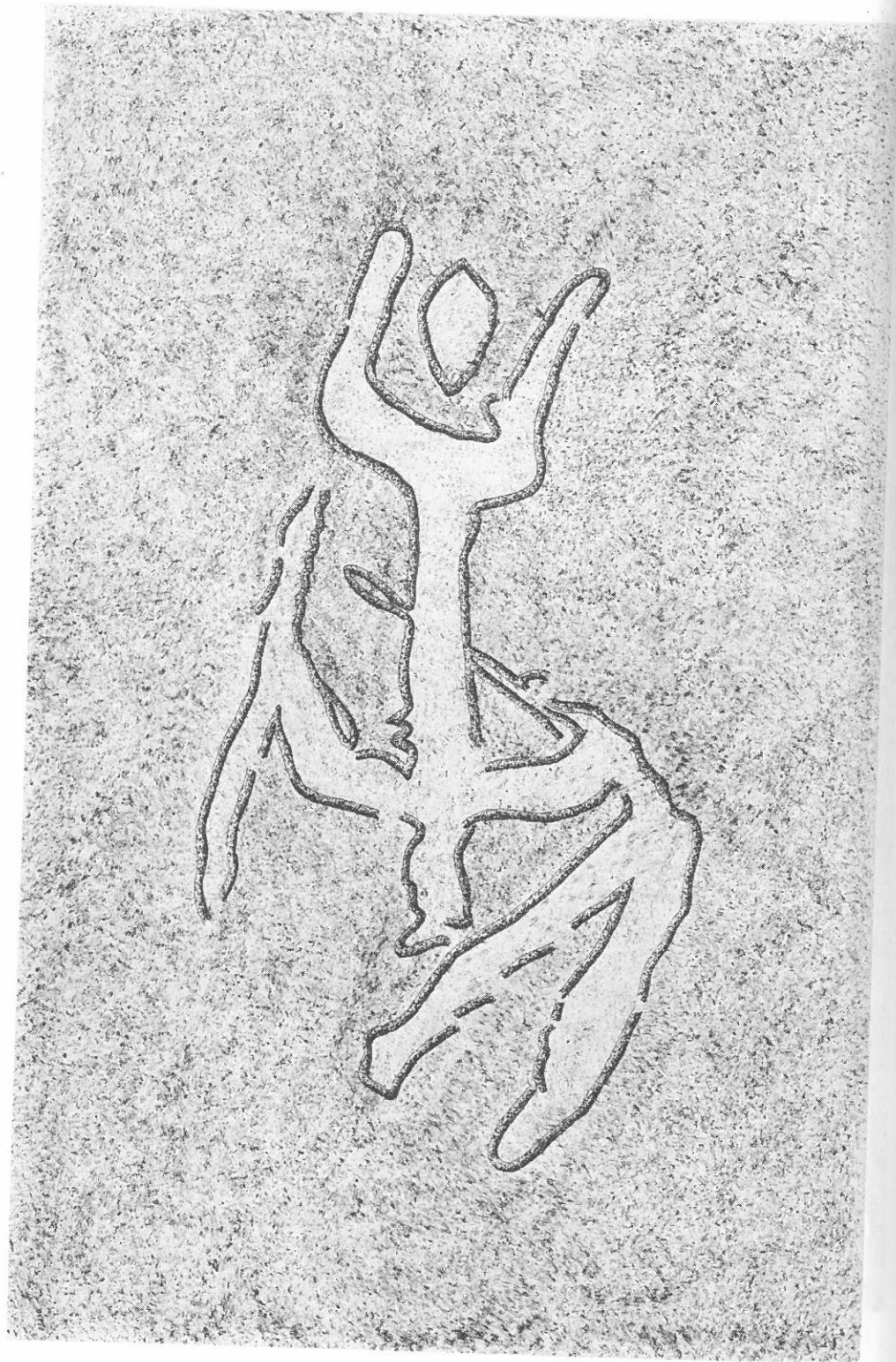
Kerks Hoop, Rocklands, Rooilaagte, and Sandfontein.

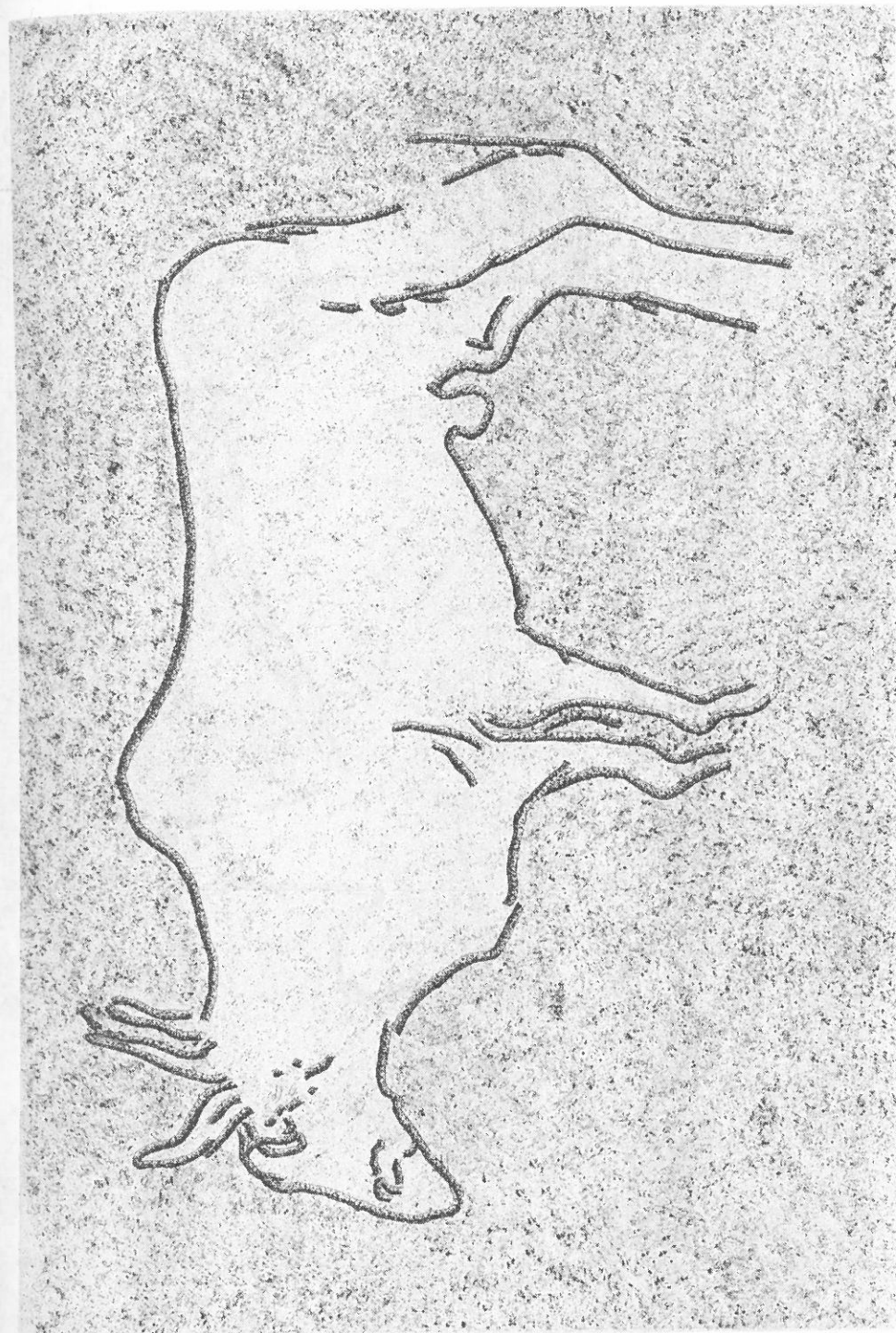
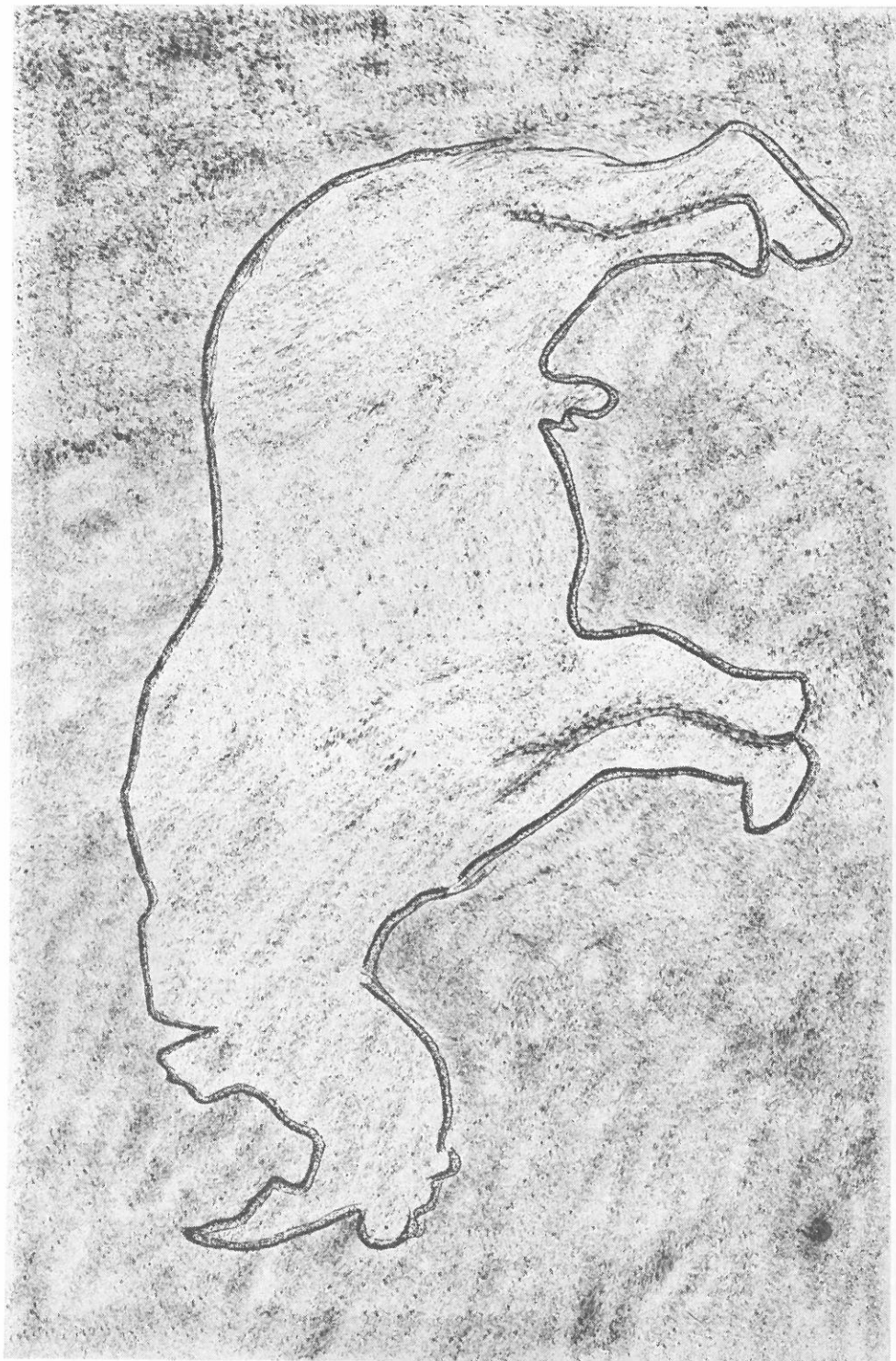
- (iii) In the Kimberley district on the farms: Bushmans Fountain near Graspan, Christian's Drift K 4, Grasbult K 109 (Warrenton), Klipfontein K 135, Nooitgedacht K 71, Rietpan K 98, Rietputs K 120 (Wind sorton), Schanzkop, portion of Slypklip Sout's K 150, K 7-11, Schoolplaats K 108 Vaalpan K 59, Van Aswegens Hoek K 18, K 19, K 20, Wildebeestkuil K 55, Zandkopje, and Zoutpansfontein K 91 (River-ton and Morris Draai).

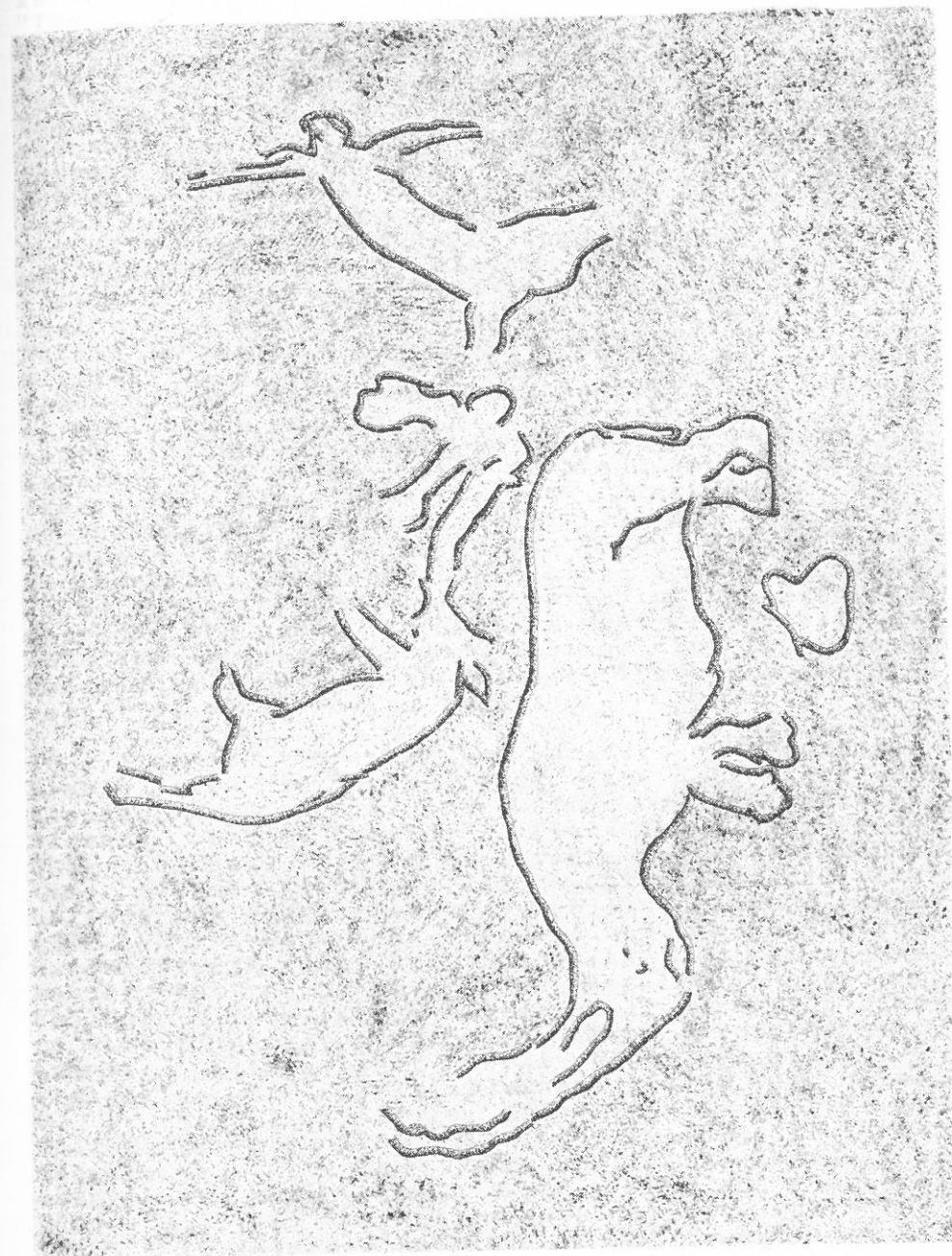
51 I visited the engravings in the Harts River Valley at Dikwana near Tlapeng in the north-eastern corner of the Manthe Area of the Taung Native Reserve. Most of these engravings are outlines of animals chiselled with stones into vertical and horizontal rock faces. In the case of zebra and a few other animals the whole body is depicted. Animals such as rhinoceros, giraffe, zebra and several kinds of buck are very well done but the engravings of many species are of inferior quality. The engravings of most animals are about 12 in. long, but those of giraffe are larger. The artists of this period were more concerned with animals connected with their hunting occupation than with people. Drawings of people appear at a later stage in what is known as Bushman paintings. It is usually assumed that these artists had little sense for the artistic observation of people and were more interested in the magic for hunting and procreation ("Mahalbi cult" by L. Frobenius), and the phenomenon of life and death in animals. One cannot assume that the artists were unable to outline people. If they were able to draw animals well, they must also have been able to draw people. Possibly there were ritual reasons or taboos that prevented them from drawing people. The few exceptions at this site of drawings are done so badly that they could as well be renderings of what the artists imagined ghosts and human monsters would look like (see accompanying sketches). The outlines of the drawings of people are given here because they are unusual for this period of rock engravings. Engravings of leguans are also unusual (see accompanying sketch). The style of the engravings of leguans is exactly similar to that of drawings which seem to belong to a more modern period, such as the engravings at Mahakane (Vryburg cf. "The Tribes of Vryburg district" Ethnol. Publ. No. 46 page 11-14). At the latter site assegais with large blades are depicted, and even one camel.











52 Stone kraals of a pre-Bantu megalithic culture are described in several publications of the Ethnic Survey for the Tswana area, but principally in the books: "The Tribes of Marico District" and "The Tribes of Vryburg District". My informants mentioned various sites of ruins of ancient stone kraals in Taung district, but I have not visited these sites. They are said to be mainly in the Taung Native Reserve. The present population does not take any interest in them, and when the forefathers of these Tlhaping were asked in 1818 about the ruins at Dithakong (which means "place of the ruins"), they replied that it was not their custom to build in stone and that they had no idea as to who built the stone kraals. As is usual, these kraals were built on hills so that the inhabitants could look out onto the plains. In the Taung Native Reserve they are along the 4000 feet altitude line on either side of the Mokgara or Leeuw Spruit which runs south into the Harts River at a distance of 5 to 8 miles from the river. i.e. south of Loselong down to Mothlabeng on the Nkabang Spruit on the western side of Leeuw Spruit, and on the eastern side, from the farm Zwartkoppies down to the elevated land about 8 miles north-east of Taung. They are also to be found on the farms Modimong and Killarney. More stone kraals are said to be on the higher eastern parts in the Magogong and Modutung areas, and others west of Pampierstat and the Berlin Mission Station in the Lower Majeakgoro Location, and also in the south-eastern corner of the Seweding Location.

53 At the time when the builders of the stone-kraals lived in South Africa, the Hottentots or Khoikhoi and the related Bushman or San race had already been in Southern Africa for a long time. When the Bantu arrived at Inyanga in Rhodesia some time between 1000 and 1450 A.Chr. the megalithic culture was long already established in the area (300 A.Chr.) from Lake Victoria and Uganda southwards through Kenya and Rhodesia. It is known to-day that the bearers of the Megalithic or stone builder culture in the eastern half of Africa came in several waves, originating from forefathers of Cushitic tribes that still have agricultural irrigation and are still stonebuilders (cf. also G. P. Murdock, "Africa, Its Peoples and Their Culture History" 1959). In later periods the Bantu made contact with them here and there, as was the case in the north-eastern Free State and Southern Rhodesia. They may also have been workers for these more advanced people. In the Tswana area it is not possible to trace contact with the stone builders. In recent archaeological literature there

52 Stone kraals of a pre-Bantu megalithic culture are described in several publications of the Ethnic Survey for the Tswana area, but principally in the books: "The Tribes of Marico District" and "The Tribes of Vryburg District". My informants mentioned various sites of ruins of ancient stone kraals in Taung district, but I have not visited these sites. They are said to be mainly in the Taung Native Reserve. The present population does not take any interest in them, and when the forefathers of these Tlhaping were asked in 1818 about the ruins at Dithakong (which means "place of the ruins"), they replied that it was not their custom to build in stone and that they had no idea as to who built the stone kraals. As is usual, these kraals were built on hills so that the inhabitants could look out onto the plains. In the Taung Native Reserve they are along the 4000 feet altitude line on either side of the Mokgara or Leeuw Spruit which runs south into the Harts River at a distance of 5 to 8 miles from the river. i.e. south of Loselong down to Mothlabeng on the Nkabang Spruit on the western side of Leeuw Spruit, and on the eastern side, from the farm Zwartkoppies down to the elevated land about 8 miles north-east of Taung. They are also to be found on the farms Modimong and Killarney. More stone kraals are said to be on the higher eastern parts in the Magogong and Modutung areas, and others west of Pampierstat and the Berlin Mission Station in the Lower Majeakgoro Location, and also in the south-eastern corner of the Seweding Location.

53 At the time when the builders of the stone-kraals lived in South Africa, the Hottentots or Khoikhoi and the related Bushman or San race had already been in Southern Africa for a long time. When the Bantu arrived at Inyanga in Rhodesia some time between 1000 and 1450 A.Chr. the megalithic culture was long already established in the area (300 A.Chr.) from Lake Victoria and Uganda southwards through Kenya and Rhodesia. It is known to-day that the bearers of the Megalithic or stone builder culture in the eastern half of Africa came in several waves, originating from forefathers of Cushitic tribes that still have agricultural irrigation and are still stonebuilders (cf. also G. P. Murdock, "Africa, Its Peoples and Their Culture History" 1959). In later periods the Bantu made contact with them here and there, as was the case in the north-eastern Free State and Southern Rhodesia. They may also have been workers for these more advanced people. In the Tswana area it is not possible to trace contact with the stone builders. In recent archaeological literature there

is a tendency to attribute stone structures to the Tswana because European travellers and Missionaries of (1829-1836) believed that there was a connection. In this period baTswana may have used stone kraals as occasional shelters, but historically there is no connection. Most of the stone kraal sites are situated far from the old Bantu homelands. It seems that the stonebuilders have died out very suddenly, possibly through epidemics, much in the same way as the Hottentots disappeared. So far no excavations of the graves and investigations into the race of the stonebuilders in West-Transvaal and the northern Cape have been made. It is possible that they were a mixture of north-east African Cushites and Hottentots or Boskop people, though an ancient nigritic type of dark-skinned people also lived in southern Africa in Pre-Bantu times.

54 It would appear that the Vaalpens and Makgalagadi did not live as far south-east as the district of Taung. This area was Bushman and Hottentot country until the middle of the last century. In 1819-1820 when the Griqua chief Andries Waterboer succeeded Adam Kok, his first official action was to subdue the still unconquered Bushmen of the country to the east and north-east of Taung. The Bushmen had a Chief "Owl", "Uil" in Afrikaans, who is also mentioned by the first European travellers. He had kept peace with the Griqua for 20 years, but when he found that his hunting grounds were fast being curtailed, he decided to fight the Hottentots. He attacked the Korana and drove their cattle away. When Waterboer attacked the Bushmen, he killed chief Owl, and took 70 prisoners. But when Owl's sons promised to keep the peace, they were given their freedom. After this the Bushmen remained on friendly terms with their neighbours for many years. Shortly after 1860, however, they took cattle from the Tlhaping at Taung again, and chief Mankuroane decided to kill all the families in his neighbourhood.

55 About to 60 miles north and north-east of Taung, Rev. John Campbell found the baThamaga or baTsatsing tribe (in 1820). They were shorter people than the Tlhaping and lived in primitive huts that were hardly more than windcreens. They were under their chief "Reebe" (Dibi). They may have been a mixture of some ancient people with Tswana. During the time of the Tlhaping chief MOLEHABANGWE, they were his allies and joined their neighbours in commandoes to capture cattle. They were well known because of their courage and fierceness. They have disappeared since the time

of Mzilikazi's attacks, but it is not known whence this tribe, which lived in several "towns" (villages) and at cattle posts, disappeared. Other names of their chiefs were "Mooshwene" (Motshwene) and Thekiso, who lived on the banks of a tributary of the Vaal River, possibly the Harts River. Rev. Robert Moffat was the last to see baThamaga, which means "The redspotted" or baTsatsing: "People of the place of the Sun". For further particulars about this tribe see "The Tribes of Vryburg District" (Ethnological Publications No. 46, par. 26-31 or page 15-18). Nowadays the surviving Tsatsing have become Tswana in culture and language and live as small clans among the Tlharo and Tlhaping. They already spoke seTswana in Campbells' time. It should be noted, however, that ancient people easily gave up their language, as e.g. did the Bergdama, the Kattea and the Vaalpens in southern Africa.

THE KORANA HOTTENTOTS

56 Originally the Korana lived at Cape Town under their chief Khora. It appears that they were not long at the Cape when Jan van Riebeck arrived. The next generation, under their chief Eikomo, trekked to the Orange River near Griquastad some time between 1661 and 1686. Part of the tribe probably remained at the Cape where "Chorachoqua" are mentioned as having lived in 1690. The Korana led a nomadic life with large stock and sheep grazing along the Vaal and Oranje Rivers. They were also hunters and traded with the "Brigqua", i.e. the baTswana. The Hottentots called the Tswana "Briqua", i.e. people of the goat, because goats were unknown to the Korana. Their headquarters was a place called "Chei amoaub", not far from the junction of the Orange and the Vaal rivers.

57 The Korana give a different version of the historical background to the Rolong chief's war. This version was given by two Korana chiefs before the Bloemhof Commission in 1869 when one of them, chief Rijt Massouw, was over 100 years old. They said that Tau lived at Taung and sent a commando to the Orange River where the Korana lived on both sides of the river. The Korana, slaughtered sheep as a token of friendliness. The Rolong, however, broke their assegais and hid them under their cloaks. When they arrived they started a fight and stabbed chief Massouw's grandfather, Gaauw Gauw, to death. The Korana, who had bows and arrows and could fight at a distance, pursued the Tswana and killed many. Chief Tau retreated to his ancient home land, Setlagole Molopo and Mosita. Subsequently, in about 1740/50 he fell ill, and died in Mosita (distr. Mafeking). The Korana informants also said that the Rolong and Tlhaping did not live together.

58 The early Tlhaping chiefs, among them Maswe (born between 1720 and 1735), lived at Nokaneng in the Langeberg, halfway between Kuruman and the confluence of the Nokana and Orange rivers. There Maswe also had an uncle with the name Tau. The Nokana flows parallel to the Langeberg on the western side of the range. At this time, i.e. the middle of the 18th century, the Tlharo also lived at the Langeberg mountains.

59 In a report to Governor van Plettenberg by a certain German from Württemberg called Wikar, a small tribe of about 250 souls, Gysikwa or Tweelingsvolk, is mentioned, and is said to be a mixture of Korana and Tswana. These Korana-Tswana or Tweelingsvolk

lived further down on the Orange River to the west of Nokaneng, while the Korana lived south of it. The Tswana component of the Tweelingsvolk need not have been Tlhaping, they could likely have been Tlharo who moved from the Nossob River down to the Orange River in about 1700, and were also a very small tribe at that time. Later the Tlharo became neighbours and guests of Tlhaping chiefs such as Molehabangwe and Mothibi. The fact that the goat was the characteristic animal of the Tlhaping and that the Tlhaping ate fish and leguans, which was not the custom of any other South-Eastern Bantu people, points to a similar type of culture as the Kgalagadi had. For this reason and the fact that the Tlhaping have no record of their earliest migration to southern Africa, as the other tribes have it, one may conclude that they originated through intermixture of early Pre-Bantu with the Hottentots on the Orange River. Further particular in this respect are given in L.F. Maingard, "The Briqua and the ethnic origin of the Batlhaping" in South African Journal of Science, Vol. XXX, 1933, p.597-602.

60 From about the middle of the 18th century onwards, a Korana group lived near the confluence of the Hartz and Vaal rivers, and at Taung. Between 1813 and 1820. This branch split again, this time into the Links or // are m// ais and the Taaibosch (Kei !Korana). They had occasional fights, but remained neighbours and intermarried, e.g. the Links chief took a Taaibosch wife. The Links were to be found at various places, but mainly where the Donkin River runs into the Vaal. After the split, Rijt Massouw Taaibosch moved to Patuni or Nukuni, north-west of Kuruman, where Rev. John Campbell encountered Korana in 1820.

61 In about 1823, when the time of unrest began, with wandering tribes marauding all over the country, Massouw's people came into contact with the first Wesleyan missionaries and the Rolong boo Seleka. They met them on their annual trek to fresh grazing. After fights (in 1823/4) with the marauding baTaung chief Moletsane, a lasting friendship began between the two chiefs (from 1826 on) which, however, contributed much to the later destruction of Massouw's tribe, especially as a result of a war between Mzilikazi and the baTaung in 1829.

62 After about 1830 the Taaibosch tribe trekked up the Vaal river, lived at Sterkfontein near Bloemhof, then at Mamusa (Schweizer Reneke), and also near Maquassi (South of Wolmaranstad), in mixed settlements with the Tlhaping baPhuduhutswa-

na and (further east the Tlhaping ba ga Maidi under chief Motlhabani who seems to have been the most powerful chief in this part of the country. Rijt Massouw was, however, chief of all the Korana north of the Vaal River, except during 1 periods when Jan Bloem's influence was extended. In 1834 Massouw visited Rev. Moffat in Kuruman. After Mzilikazi has been driven out with the assistance of some Korana in 1837, Massouw withdrew with his people to Zendelingsfontein between Klerksdorp and Wolmaranstad, where he was encountered in 1846 when chief Motlhabani removed to the Vaal, and in 1850 when regent Mahura returned from Mamusa to Taung. In 1861 Massouw's people appropriated cattle belonging to Mahura, who then became an enemy of Massouw. Rijt Massouw, who was born before 1769, was already very old at this time, and his son David seems to have ruled for him.

63 By a treaty in 1872, chief David Massouw ceded his territorial rights to the South African Republic, reserving for himself and his people certain portions of the territory as a location. Owing to continual stock theft a war was fought against chief Mankuroane in 1882 and the Transvaal Republic in 1885.

THE TLHAPING

64 The district of Taung is inhabited by the baTlhaping and small groups of other people who are now part of the Tlhaping tribes. There are some baTshweng who form the majority of the population under Headman Seoloseng in the Vaaltyn Location, but lived mixed with the Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana. The baTshweng were originally Hurutshe, with the totem tshwene (baboon), and left the Hurutshe together with the Tlharo, probably about 1650.

65 On the irrigation land at Moss there are a number of Xhosa who live under headman B. Smous of the baTlhaping. In Majeng there is a mixed population of Xhosa, Zulu and southern Sotho, who joined the baTlhaping tribe some years back, when they were removed as squatters from farms near Kimberley. They are much detribalised and undisciplined. At Modimong there are some Hurutshe and Kgatla ba ga Manaana under Headman Stanley Mankuroane. They lived in this area long before the Tlhaping arrived.

66 At the beginning of the last century the only Tlhaping centre was the southernmost part of the present district of Vryburg. Though they say that they are a branch of the Rolong, their real origin is unknown, and it is doubtful whether they were proper Rolong. They have the same totem as the Rolong, viz. the kudu (Tholo). Their Bantu Authority emblem, the yellow fish, is a modern design to distinguish them from other tribes. The "tlhapi" (fish), is not their totem. The tribal name, "people of the place of the fish" was given to them by the Rolong, because the Tlhaping resided on the banks of the Vaal River where they lived on fish during a famine. Eating fish is not customary for the Bantu. However, the country abounded with game and economically the Tlhaping were not in a different situation to the Rolong who did not eat fish at that time. Therefore it is possible that fish-eating comes from another culture, especially since the Tlhaping lived in a country where remains of various ancient races can be found, as well as forerunners of the earliest Tswana and Sotho.

67 The Rolong also say that the Tlhaping were a Rolong branch which separated from the Rolong during the time of the Rolong Chief TAU. It is furthermore related that Tawana, TAU's brother, was the first Tlhaping chief. The Maidi branch especially originated from a chief Tawana. About

14 generations of Tlhaping chiefs until today should reach back to about 1600 to the time of chief Phuduhutšwana. Therefore for over 100 years they must already have been a separate branch of the Rolong under their own chiefs, before separating during the rule of chief TAU, who died about 1730.

68 It is true that in about 1650 there was a great famine in southern Africa, and it was during this time that the Kwenā tribes scattered and many of them moved to the present Basutoland. During this time the Tlhaping may have trekked south in search of a river. It is said that they lived at Digkatlong ("junction of rivers"), i.e. where the Vaal and Harts Rivers meet. All the larger Tswana tribes know their earliest migrations, but the Tlhaping do not. No facts about them can be traced in the early Rolong history. They may have intermixed with Hottentots, early Sotho, Digōja etc. All the earliest negroid populations intermixed to a greater or lesser extent with the original population in the country, viz. the Hottentots or their racial relatives. It is generally known and also confirmed by my Tlhaping informants that the present country up to Mafeking district was "ba-Kgothu", i.e. Hottentot, country. They also say that their first headman who settled in this country was Tselayakgothu ("road of the Hottentot"), who married a Hottentot girl. The same process took place with the Tlharo at the same time, i.e. about 1800. Another pointer to contact with an early people in South Africa is that the Tlhaping and Rolong dialect, i.e. southern Tswana, has many affinities with the Kgālagadi dialect of the Sotho-Tswana language group, which may also not be the original language of the Kgālagadi.

69 In old historical sources dates during which chiefs lived, calculated from genealogical data, can be found. These are unreliable because brothers and uncles are taken as separate generations. Historical dating before the time of the Tlhaping chief VI MASWE (born between 1720 and 1735) is only approximate by correct. The Tlhaping chiefs' genealogy begins with I PHUDUHU-TSWANA or with II MMILE. The latter was a son or brother of the former. In a praise poem we hear of "Mmile a Phuduhutšwana" which means that MMILE was probably the son. The name PHUDUHUTŠWANA suggests that there was also an elder brother Phuduhudu. My informants explained that PHUDUHUTSWANA was a very active leader and famous warrior and thus became more important than his elder brother. There are two Tlhaping ba Phuduhudu

tribes at Dithakong and Logobate which, it is assumed, have descended from this Phuduhudu. According to other sources this branch originated from Molehe who had a second and symbolical name, Phuduhudu. It is not known where the first chiefs lived.

70 The third chief was III MODUKANÊLÔ (other spelling: Morakanêlô) who had a son IV MOLOKEDI, born sometime between 1625 and 1660. The separation of the Tlhaping from the Rolong must have taken place during his time, i.e. about 1700. MOLOKEDI is not an important chief, and possibly did not rule. His sons were V MAMAE, Motlola and Mosakga. According to older unpublished genealogies in files of the Department of Native Affairs and the Magistrate's office, Vryburg, and also according to old informants, MOLOKEDI is an elder brother of MAMAE. But in traditional praise poems we hear of MAMAE A MOLOKEDI, which means that MAMAE is the son. MAMAE was born some time between 1660 and 1685. MAMAE had the following sons: VI MOKGOSI, Tau, Marumo, Moduana, Molehe, and Mašetlwane. Some of these sons are the forefathers of headmen and branches of the Tlhaping (cf. tables of chiefs' genealogy, page 42A) According to John Campbell (Travels in South Africa 1815, p.206) the father of MOKGOSI was "Koola", but Motlola is probably meant.

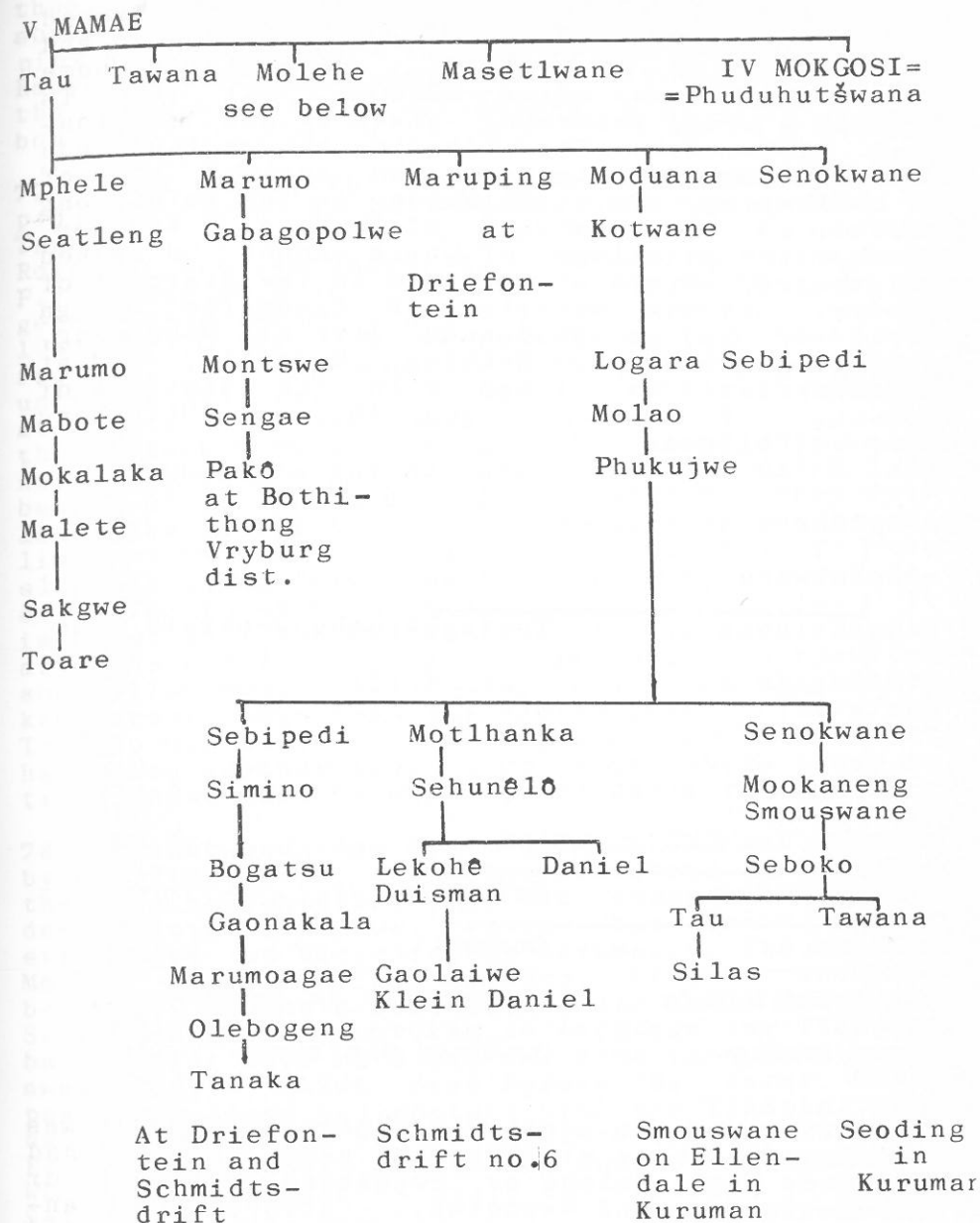
71 VI MOKGOSI was born about 1690-1710. This would also be the period during which the Tlhaping ba ga Maidi and several other Tlhaping branches originated. The father of their first chief MAIDI was Tawana, possibly the younger brother of the Rolong chief TAU (born about 1620 - 50, died 1730-40). If this is true, then the Maidi would be nearer related to the Rolong than the Tlhaping, who had their own chiefs for several generations before this time. The Rolong chief TAU is, however, sometimes confused with Tau, the son of the Tlhaping chief V MAMAE, who lived one generation later, and also fought a war near Taung. This Tau was regent for VII MASWE. According to some sources Tau is the first-born, but according to others chief VI MOKGOSI is the first-born.

72 The b a g a M a r u m o branch are usually regarded as the highest-ranking of the Tlhaping. They are descended from Tau, though various sources and informants differ as to whether Marumo was a brother or a son of Tau, or even Tau himself.

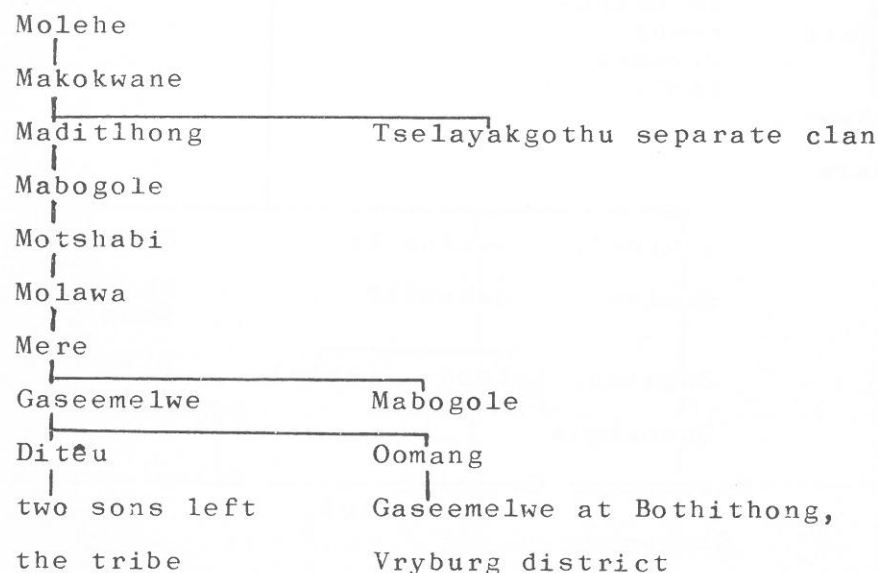
73 Marumo had an elder brother Mphele whose descendants are, however, not acknowledged as a

separate group. Although it is said that Maruping and Moduana were his younger brothers. It is not sure whether they belong to this generation, or were brothers of his father, i.e. of Tau. The descendants of Maruping are unknown and, as those of Senokwane, who do not form a separate group. They live scattered under various headmen in Schmidtsdrift No. 5, Thamasikwa, and Bothithong in Vryburg. Usually the бага Maruping and бага Moduana are counted as one group with the бага Marumo. It is related that a "Marumo chief" with the name Thokwe was taken prisoner in the Langeberg Rebellion in 1897.

74 The genealogy which includes branches of the Tlhaping, reads as follows:



75 The ba ga Molehe or ba Phuduhudu as mentioned descended from Molehe, a younger brother of Tau and older brother of IV MOKGOSI. According to some sources they come after MOKGOSI, but this is probably a wrong rendering given by old missionaries at Kuruman. The Tlhaping ba ga Phuduhudu form an independent tribe at the ancient home of the baTlhaping, viz. at Dithakong in the Bothithong Reserve, in the district of Vryburg. Another branch, the genealogy of which cannot be linked with theirs, lives at Logobate in the district of Kuruman. In the district of Taung the ba ga Molehe or ba ga Phuduhudu live at Mokgareng, Majeakgoro, Vaaltyn, Sekhing, Mmamutle, and at Baviaanskrantz No. 1 and 2 in the district of Herbert. The chiefs' genealogy at Dithakong reads as follows:



76 One of the junior brothers of V MAMAE was Motlole, which is still a clan name. V MAMAE had the sons Tau, Molehe or Phuduhudu, MOKGOSI or Phuduhutswana, and Mashetwa. According to another source the sons were MOKGOSI in the third hut, Phekwe, Mosakga, Madito, Matlholane and Leteane. VI MOKGOSI was born in the second half of the 17th century, possibly at Taung, from where Rolong, but possibly also Tlhaping with

them, were driven out by the Korana Hottentots in about 1730-40. Another ancient home of the Tlhaping was Nokaneng in the centre of the Langeberg Range, not very far from the Oranje river, where the Links and Taaibosch Korana were their neighbours.

77 VII MASWE, the only known son of MOKGOSI was probably born about 1700-30. He moved back to Taung at the invitation of Tau, chief of the Rolong, who intended to attack the Tlhaping. F.J. Language describes this event in "Herkoms en geskiedenis van die Tlhaping" Bantu Studies vol.1, 1942, p.120-122. MASWE pretended to be deaf and foolish, but attended the kgotla meetings daily, until he learnt Tau's plan to attack the village at night. The Tlhaping moved out quietly with their stock, only leaving a few animals to make noise. When the Rolong came they found MASWE left behind alone, and the village deserted. They followed the Tlhaping in the direction of the Buxton lime works, where they were ambushed in the slightly hilly formation further west, and defeated. Tau is said to have left for the north. It is known that the Rolong chief Tau died at Mosita after he had left Taung. This must have occurred about 1730-40. All Rolong and Tlhaping tribes know about this Rolong-Tlhaping war. Therefore Tau who was driven out of Taung by the Korana must have been another Tau. Or if the above story is true, MASWE must have been born earlier.

78 MASWE had the sons MOLEHABANGWE and Mosake by his first wife, and Lekwe who seems to be older than his half-brothers, by the second wife. The descendants of Lekwe, among them Isaak Lekwe, still live at Manyeding in Kuruman. The sons of Morake were: Maribe, Seokoro, Dipheku and Diso banyane. Maribe's descendants are still found in Schmidtsdrift. According to Language the Tlhaping ba ga Maidi were, with Tau for some time, and broke away later. MASWE died before the first European travellers had contact with the Tlhaping probably towards the end of the 18th century. However, Rev. John Campbell, still met some of MOLEHABANGWE's brothers, and asister, and mentions the names Salakooto, prob. Molehabangwe's son Saku, Munnameets (Monnametse, who is not remembered any more) and the sister Leappa (Leepo). According to Andrew Smith's Diary (p.406), MASWE and his son MOLEHABANGWE moved north from Dikgatlong and settled in the Taung area and at Phuduhutswa near Langeberg towards the end of the 18th century.

79 MASWE's son, VIII MOLEHABANGWE, born 1740-55, succeeded to the chieftainship. Many early travel-

lers who visited the Tswana met and described this chief, who was an old man when he died in 1812. The placename Dithakong, where the first Europeans visited the Tlhaping, means stone ruins. These have no connection with the Tswana, and the Tlhaping assured the first visitors that they did not know who built these stone kraals, and that it was not Tlhaping custom to build in this way. For further particulars about stone Kraals see "The tribes of Vryburg district" Ethnological Publication Series No.46, par.23, 24. In 1811 the old Dithakong was moved to the present place Dithakong. MOLEHABANGWE had the following sons:

1st hut: Mogamupelo, MOTHIBI, MOLALE, MAHURA;
2nd Hut: no sons

3rd hut: Mosakga

3th hut: Saku, Maditiwe, Matlolane.

According to Rev. John Campbell (p.207) MOTHIBI had the following brothers and sisters, ie. children of MOLEHABANGWE:

Brothers:

Malema (=Molema)
Malaala (=Molale)
Mahoorra (=Mahura)
Mapareeha (=Moepadira)
Maperera
Kannakamora
Heekane

Sisters

Setezoo (Seteisho)
Koe-ee
Karoweetz
Marei (=Marei)
Shuai
Marujanee (=Mareinyane)

80 IX MOTHIBI, born 1770-75, succeeded to the chieftainship in 1812, but may have ruled for his father before that, and was chief over all the Tlhaping. He fought many wars and carried out cattle raids, even as far afield as the Ovambo in S.W.A. He also had several encounters with the Hottentots and Griqua and, once slaughtered many of them. He changed his headquarters frequently. The principal places were Dithakong and Lotlhakeng (Batlharos, Kuruman). Part of the tribe lived in Taung. For short periods he lived at Phuduhutšwe (Langeberg) and even near Mamusa (Schweizer Reneke) to the north-east of Taung. Towards the end of his life he went to Philippolis to live with the Griqua under Adam Kok. This contributed much to the breaking up of the tribe. His followers did not go with him, and his half-brother Saku returned back on the way.

81 After the time of MOTHIBI, who died about 1838-40 at Gabodigelo in the Griqua country, the Tlhaping were broken up into several sections. MOTHIBI's country was so large that he subdivided it among his sons and brothers. We therefore now find the following Tlhaping sections:

(1) That which had authority over the Phokwane, Magogong, Majeakgorò, and Modutung areas in the Taung district, and was headed successively by Iehe, Gasebone, Botlhasetse, Galeshiwe, and Phetlhu (Phetlhu did not rule). This section had the smaller area.

(2) That which had authority over the largest area, reaching from Dikgatlong at the Vaal-Hartz confluence to the west of Kuruman, and comprising the former Dikgatlong (Schmidtsdrift), the following locations in Taung district: Majeng, Mmamutle Shaleng, Driefontein, Seeding, Seking, and in Kuruman district: Manyeding, Bothetheletsa, Vlakfontein (Metsi Matswe), Smouswane, Konong, Logobate, Seeding and Maruping. The last three areas were transferred to the Tlharo chief Tōtō (in 1945) and the other areas were put under the newly created chieftainship of chief O. Phetlhu (in 1944) in Kuruman. The functions of Jantjie Kgosienewang were reduced to those of a headman by error. This section was headed successively by Jantjie, Luka, DeVolk, and Kgosienewang.

(3) That which had authority over the Taung area north of Magogong around the present town Taung and was headed successively by Molale, Mankuroane. Nothing is known about this Molale, Kgosietsile, and the status of the ba ga Maidi neighbours, who probably were semi-independent, because they lived with the Rolong previously.

(4) That which later was in charge of the northern part of Taung and the Dithakwaneng area, in Vryburg district, and was headed by Mahura, Mašwe, Tholotitane, Gaobakwe, and Lekwe in succession.

(5) That which had authority over the area around Klein Chwaing in the Vryburg district, and was ruled successively by Saku, Thaganyane, Pulelo, and K.A. Thaganyane.

82 IX MOTHIBI had the following wives and sons, as far as my informants remember:

1 Mahutō da. of a !Korana chief

- a Iehe m (who is said to have had the sons Phetlhu and Gasebone)
- b Bojang
- c Kgame
- d Madibotoka (who was killed by the people)

2 Kegogile, a favourite wife, Griqua Hottentot

- a Jantjie (whose son was Luka)
 - b Molema
 - c Telêkelô
- 3 Kelemekae (some informants regard her as a substitute wife for the first hut)
- a Molale (father of Mankuruane who had a son also named Molale)
- 4 name of wife unknown (some informants regard her as a substitute wife for the first hut, but for this there is no reason according to Tswana custom)
- a Mahura
- 5 name unknown (some informants say she was of the 4th hut)
- a Saku

it is said that Iehe died long before his father, and that his son Phetlhu was insame. According to John Campbell (p.207) MOTHIBI's wives living in 1815 were "Mahootoo" (Mahuto) and "Keebehelee" (possibly Kelemekae). He says MOTHIBI's sons were: Pechee (Phetlhu), Peaabooran (Gasebone?), Jangee (Jantjie), Mozebee (Mesebe?) and his daughters were: Matjaragee (Batswaregi), Matzetyanee (Matsitsane), and Maharree.

83 The tribe in Kuruman gives X PHETLHU as the successor of MOTHIBI. Possibly he and his descendants never ruled. Petlhu was born some time between 1795 and 1810, and probably lived at Phuduhutswe (near Langeberg). When MOTHIBI died in 1836-8 and PETLHU might have succeeded, the tribes were still in a state of unrest as consequence of the Matebele raids. Therefore PETLHU could not have gained much importance, and nothing much is remembered about him, not even when he died. He must have died early, because his only son Phehuetsile was still a minor at the time of his death. Phehuetsile died at Rooidam, north of Majeng (Langeberg).

84 Phehuetsile had a son Phetlhu, born about 1839-40 near Langeberg. Also this Petlhu did not become chief, as the regents (cf. par.378/9) held the power in their hands. He is well remembered, because he was executed for committing murder in the Langeberg Rebellion in 1897. He lived at Phokwane in Taung where Molale had lived. He married one wife, and had the following issue by

her:

- a PELOKGOSI m
- b Fōrō (Furrow)
- c Masetlhokiwa f
- d Konong f.

85 XI GASEBONWE, the younger brother of X PETLHU, born about 1800-15, succeeded as a regent at Pokwane in the Taung district, and was in turn succeeded by his son XII BOTLHASITSE. He again was succeeded by his son XIII GALESHIWE, who also resided at Pokwane in Taung. He was born about 1840, married Makwalakwala, and had the following issue by her:

- a Botlhasitse m born 1910, died c.1960
- b Mosadiwatshabo f
- c Galeishiwe m
- d Motselapala m.

86 Chief XIII GALESHIWE was deposed by the government and imprisoned because he had taken part in the Langeberg Rebellion of 1896. The Langeberg Rebellion was an armed uprising against the Government, due to the killing cattle in the Rinderpest infested areas. As a punishment for the Rebellion the Native Reserve at Phokwane was confiscated by the Cape Government (Act No. 17 of 25.8.1897) and proclaimed Forest Reserve (Proclamation No. 1016 dd. 21.4.1898). In 1903 GALESHIWE was released from prison, and settled with his followers at Magogong under Chief Molale, where he died in 1927.

87 Since 1910 the Government had been planning to give GALESHIWE another farm to live on. In 1927 application was received, asking the Government for land with better grazing and water conditions, but Galeshiwe's successor refused the farms offered. In 1938 the Government offered the farm Roodepoort and in 1942 an area in Kuruman district, but the chief's son Botlhasitse Gale-siwe turned down the offers again, and remained at Modutong, where he died about 1960, after having been blind for many years. The eldest of his three sons, Nganaphuti, now lives in Kimberley Location No.2.

88 The chieftainship of Phetlhu and Galeshiwe thus came to an end during the Langeberg Rebellion. The tribe became scattered, and the clan system was broken up and lost its importance for the tribal government.

89 It is not clear whether the tribe at Phokwane had a chief by custom after the official recognition was cancelled in 1897. XIV PELOKGOSI wanted to become chief, and asked Rev. Jennings to support him. He also went to Majeng, hoping for recognition by the people, but they wanted a son of their original chief, Jantjie, to become their chief. According to custom PELOKGOSI, born about 1860 and son of the second Phetlhu could have succeeded at Phokwane in 1935, but he died at Phokwane in 1936. He had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Matsitsi
(all her children died young)
 - a Tsitsi f
 - b Petlhu m
 - c Gaelebangwe f
 - d Tlhahareseng m
- 2 Mosadiamontšwana
 - a Phillip m (born about 1870-8, died)
 - b-k died young
 - 1 OLEBOGENG m (present chief).

90 It is said that PELOKGOSI and his sons spent most of their lives in the diamond fields. Between 1936 and 1944 no chief was appointed for the areas of Phetlhu and Jantjie.

91 About 1944 the Government wanted to appoint Chiefs for the Tlharo and for the Tlhaping in Kuruman. After an investigation into the genealogy, it was assumed that XV OLEBOGENG PHETLHU was the rightful chief, but the tribe was not sufficiently consulted, and might have favoured Jantjie. OLEBOGENG grew up at Fourteen Streams in Kimberley, where he also worked for many years.

Tokwe -----	Thara Mohatla (under hdm. Ganoke in Taung) ---- ?
Ganoke bn. 1830/5 -----	Lekwene, bn. 1860/5, dd. 1953 ----- John Theiyo bn. 1898 hdm. at Thamasikwa
	Pakwe ----- Smash Mosimanegape
1. hut Maruping (in Taung) ----- ?	
1. hut Segnae bn. 1852, dd. 1925 -----	Pakwe bn. 1891 -----
	hdm. at Bothithong
	1. hut Thihelô bn. 1928
	2. hut Molale bn. 1932

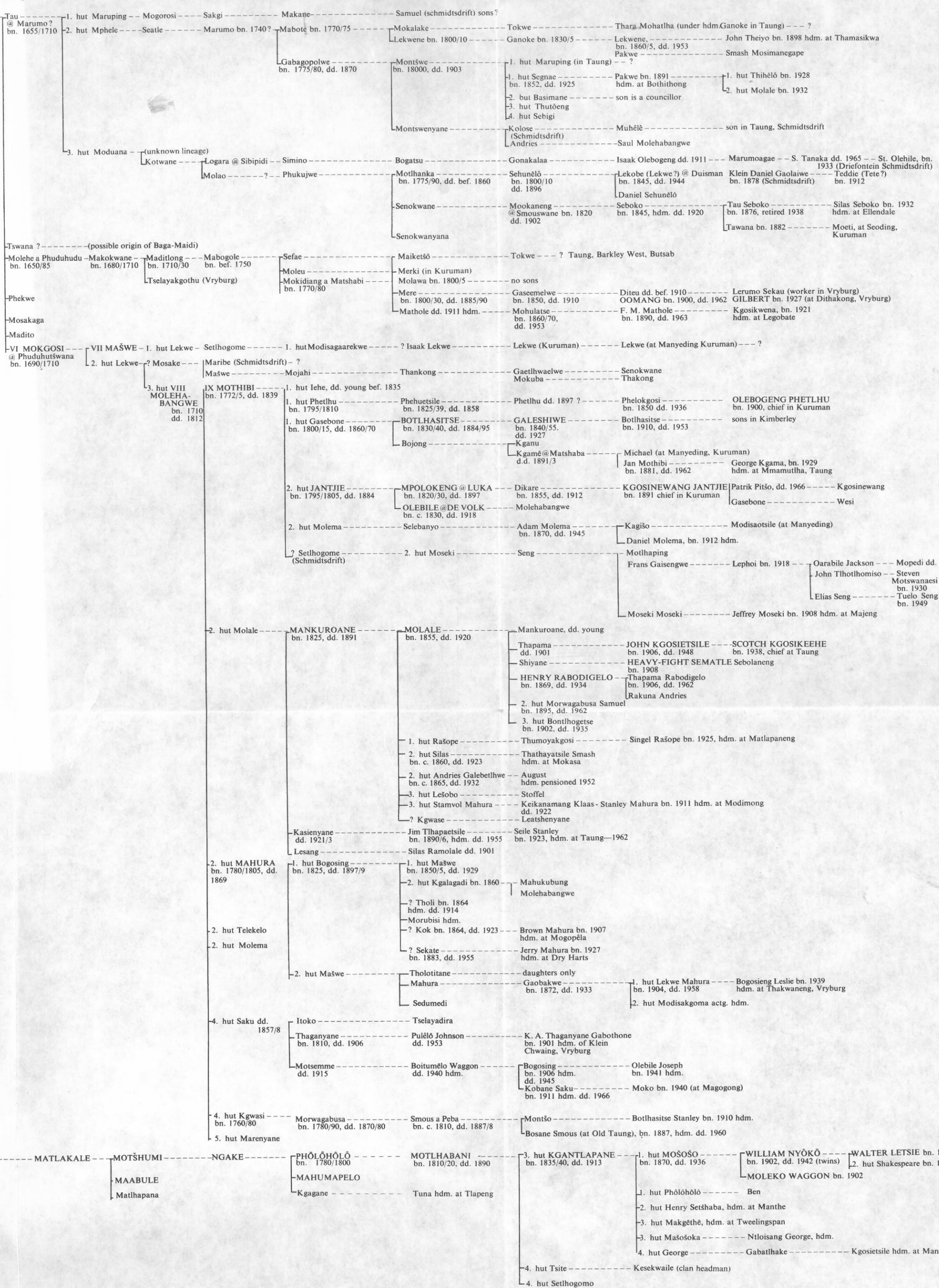
Table No. II GENEALOGIES OF BATLHAPING CHIEFS AND HEADMEN
(ruling chiefs and regents are indicated by capital letters, hdm. means headman, bn. born, dd. died)

Contemporary BAROLONG chiefs for historical comparison:

XI SETLHARE --- XII MASEPA --- XIII MOKGÔPHA --- XIV THIBÊLA --- XV TAU --- XIX RATLOU
XVI MORAKILE --- XVII NTHUFA --- SELEKA
Tawana
(possible origin of the Baga-Maidi)

BATLHAPING chiefs:

I Phuduhutswana --- II MMILE --- III MODUKANÊLO --- IV MOLOKEDI --- V MAMAE
bn. 1530/1605 bn. 1560/1630 bn. 1600/60
Tsebetona Motlole
(clan to-day)



7 Urban Locations and industrial compound

92 The district of Taung has no urban Location, because the chief's village is near the small European town of Taung. In this town the Bantu employees live on the premises of their employers, and the labourers of the railway station have their houses on Railway ground near the station. In 1960 nearly 600 Bantu lived in the European village of Taung.

93 The lime works of Norlim have a compound for their labourers. Of the 570 labourers and employees of the lime works, 420 live in the compound, while the rest live at home in the nearby reserve.

94 Plans for the establishment of two Bantu villages in the district have been approved. These are Majeakgoro and Magogong. Majeakgoro will be situated West of the post office Greefdale. It will be 409 morgen in extent. Of this area over 35 morgen are reserved for sports grounds and parks. Provision is made for 14 Church sites, 5 lower primary schools, 3 higher primary schools, one secondary school, and 5 crèches. A business centre will provide for shops, a market, light industrial establishment, a garage, a clinic, Government offices, offices for municipal administration and police station, a beer hall, cinema, and a hotel. A site is reserved for a hospital, although there is a large hospital at Taung. The roads and streets of the town will have a total length of 30 miles.

8 Numbers and distribution of the Bantu population

95 In May 1946, August 1951, and September 1960, population censuses were held throughout South Africa. The figures for the individual tribes and sections under headmen are given in sections 5 below. Roughly 15 to 20% should be added to the totals to account for persons missed by the census. It may also be assumed that the Bantu population has increased by 1.8% to 2% per year (average for South Africa) before 1960. According to the census the population figures for the reserve did not increase between 1946 and 1951. This was due to the fact that the census was taken during the harvesting time, when over 10,000 of baTswana were away for 3-4 months on European farms working as harvesters. For this reason the 1960 census was fixed to take place after harvesters had returned to their home villages.

96 I estimate that the district of Taung has a total population of between 56,000 and 63,000 persons in 1965 (not including those away from the district), and the district of Herbert between 13,000 and 14,000 persons.

TABLE NO. III

97 Census figures for the districts of Taung, Barkly West, Herbert, Kimberley and Gordonia since 1921.

Year	Urban Bantu	Rural	Males Bantu	Females Bantu	Total
<u>Taung:</u>					
1921	-	20488	9642	10846	20488
1936	-	21724	10105	11619	21724
1946	351	26050	13428	12973	26401
1951	2620	27452	14604	15468	30072
(over 10000 harvesters away from the district)					
1960	1146	49477	23845	26778	50623
<u>Barkly West:</u>					
1921	1846	21518	12405	10959	23364
1936	3323	21005	12352	11976	24328
1946	3359	20963	12144	12178	24322
1951	4418	10590	7838	7180	15008
1960	5822	12282	9608	8496	18104
<u>Herbert:</u>					
1921	505	6753	3702	3556	7258
1936	962	6769	3910	3821	7731
1946	1211	7151	4296	4066	8362
1951	1794	7540	4578	4756	9334
1960	2139	8870	5476	5533	11009

INTRODUCTION

Year	Urban Bantu	Rural	Males	Females	Total
				Bantu	
<u>Kimberley:</u>					
1921	13982	7273	12175	9080	21255
1936	42272	15262	13050	11706	24756
1946	26495	11062	21156	16401	37557
1951	27815	8455	19759	16511	36270
1960	37167	4158	21354	19971	41325

Gordonia:

1921	228	753	553	428	981
1936	1006	1296	1260	1042	2302
1946	2328	2351	2631	2058	4679
1951	3405	4574	4470	3509	7979
1960	5041	5273	6028	4786	11314

High population figures under "urban" are usually due to the number of mine workers, the majority of whom are, in fact, tribally bound rural.

INTRODUCTION

98 The population figures of all races for these districts are as follows:

Year	Euro- peans	Asi- atics	Coloureds	Afri- cans	All races
------	----------------	---------------	-----------	---------------	--------------

District of Taung:

1921	1197	2	332	20488	22019
1936	1533	9	423	21724	23689
1946	635	2	136	27725	28498
1951	740	5	236	30072	31053
1960	645	6	159	50655	51465

Barkly West:

1921	8108	216	3645	23364	35333
1936	6203	111	4255	24328	34897
1946	3802	53	3337	14667	21859
1951	3822	46	5049	15008	23935
1960	3566	41	5562	18104	27273

Herbert:

1921	4218	24	2628	7258	14128
1936	3910	5	3139	7731	14785
1946	3488	2	4092	8362	15944
1951	3457	2	4764	9334	17557
1960	2924	-	5804	11009	19737

Kimberley:

1921	21664	1000	9120	21255	53039
1936	20151	1010	11617	24756	57534
1946	21761	979	12954	33940	69634
1951	22884	1157	15680	36270	75991
1960	26362	1096	19340	41325	88123

Year	Euro- peans	Asi- atics	Coloureds	Afri- cans	All races
<u>Gordonia:</u>					
1921	7828	3	9501	981	18313
1936	16801	10	21034	2302	40147
1946	17830	4	27744	4679	50257
1951	17941	3	31656	7979	57579
1960	17961	5	44448	10314	72728

99 The density of population per sq.mile cannot be given separately for Europeans and Bantu, because a large proportion of the Bantu population lives on European farms. The density of population for the tribal land will be given for the individual tribes under par. 5 below. The density of population for the whole districts is as follows for 1960):

District	Area in		Population per	
	sq. miles	sq.km.	sq.mile	sq.km.
Taung Native area	928	2404	52.5	20.3
Taung, whole distr.	1178	3051	43.7	16.9
Barkly West	2500	6475	10.9	4.2
Herbert	2960	7666	6.6	2.5
Kimberley	1372	3553	64.2	24.9
Gordonia	20674	53546	3.5	1.4

The higher density of population in the district of Kimberley is due to the large number of mine workers.

100 The exact birth and death rates cannot be stated, because not all births and deaths among Natives are reported. I estimate that 20% could be added to the figures. The following figures are recorded in the office of the Bantu Affairs Commissioner of Taung:

TABLE NO. V

Year	Births	Deaths
1957	1478	622
1958	1556	743
1959	1704	834
1960	1225	588
1961	1175	578
1962	2270	641
1963	1728	617

High figures for one year may mean that a number of cases were carried over from the previous year. The steady rise in the figures also means that more people report birth and deaths.

101 Most of the tables below show figures of the Census of 1946 and 1951 only, because the figures for 1960 are not available yet. Table No.VI shows the distribution of the population over the different categories of land. Because the Census of 1951 was taken during the time of harvest, over 10,000 Natives were away on European farms, and therefore less residents were recorded for the reserves. Table No.VI shows the number of taxpayers, or the number of reference books issued for 1957. The number of taxpayers gives an indication for an estimate of the strength of the total population, i.e. including absent workers. This number should be multiplied by 4 or $4\frac{1}{2}$ to give the total population. Many people are, however, registered in towns and labour centres. In 1959/60 2,932 families paid local tax in the district of Taung, the amount collected was:

R2,693 paid by baTswana

R 239 paid by foreigners

R2,932 Total.

102 Table No. VII shows the speakers of the various Bantu languages of South Africa in each district, figures being for 1951.

103 Table No.VIII shows the relation between ages and marital condition. Figures are only available for 1946.

104 Table No.IX shows literacy and knowledge of the official European languages according to the Census of 1951.

TABLE NO.VI

Distribution of population over different categories of land

Area	1951		1960		1957	
	male	female	male	female	total	tax payers
District total	14,604	15,468	23,845	26,778	50,623	
Rural total	12,703	14,749	23,638	26,522	50,160	
Urban total	509	578	207	256	463	
excl. mine workers						
On Euro- pean and other farms	350	250	342	293	635	
Mines	1,358	109	537	146	683	
Construc- tion gangs	7	1				
On Trust farms	63	55	Trust now included with tribal land			
On Tribal land	12,171	14,434	22,759	26,083	48,842	
<u>Population in different tribal areas:</u>						
Taung Stat	509	578	2,086	2,377	4,458	643
Marubising & Modimong	1,621	1,886	1,325	1,572	2,897	895
Dryharts	973	1,142	1,284	1,565	2,849	28

Area	1951		1960		1957 Tax pay- ers
	Male	Female	Male	Female	Total
Magopéla	975	1,144	1,666	1,895	3,561
Matlapa- neng	972	1,244	1,177	1,431	2,608
Mokga- reng	567	576	1,326	1,448	2,774
Mato- long & Rooiwal	?		740	860	1,600
Mokasa or Old Taung	?		1,479	1,765	3,244
Banks- drift	160	206	978	1,044	2,022
Buxton & Thamasikwa	see	mines	944	1,102	2,046
Vaaltyn	1,604	2,065	327	381	708
Maphoi- tsile & Magogong	?		1,819	2,098	3,917
various					+ 1,216
Total under chief Mankuroane	?		15,345	17,845	33,190
Manthe	1,551	1,788	1,253	1,275	2,528
Molelema			969	1,133	2,102
Tweeling- span	754	830	636	686	1,322
Tlapeng	586	657	356	408	764
Total under chief Motlhabani	2,891	3,275	3,214	3,502	6,716

Area	1951		1960		1957 total pax pay- ers
	male	female	male	female	
lower Ma- jeakgoro	444	553	624	767	1391
Upper Ma- jeakgoro	310	393	412	513	925
Sekging	209	222	408	458	866
Seoding	343	436	382	405	787
Driefon- tein	546	631	569	690	1259
Shaleng	412	527	502	579	1081
Mamutla	335	401	677	667	1344
Majeng	504	510	626	657	1283
Southern Loca- tions total	3103	3673	4200	4736	8936
Total for Bantu area of Taung	-	-	22759	26083	48842

District of Herbert:

Total	5476	5533	11009
Urban of Douglas and Campbell	913	1007	1920
Semi urban erven and Bucklands	311	316	627
Baviaankrantz No. 1, 2	202	227	429
Boomplaatz No. 3	285	348	633
Schmidtsdrift No. 4	252	242	494
Platdrift No. 5	176	204	380
Sivonel No. 6	341	408	749
Total Schmidts- drift Reserve	1256	1429	2685
On European farms	3198	2987	6185

TABLE NO. VII

Census 1951

District of:

Home Language	Taung		Barkly West		Herbert		Kimberley	
	m	f	m	f	m	f	m	f
<u>seTswana</u>								
urban	489	362	1618	1631	357	452	7931	8973
rural	12061	14006	4761	4582	2456	2677	2683	1876
total	26918		12592		5942		20463	
<u>S. Sotho</u>								
urban	488	60	246	200	51	35	2172	1206
rural	204	229	375	281	131	115	1043	158
total	981		1102		332		4579	
<u>N. Sotho</u>								
urban	4	1	7	2	33	33	89	79
rural	20	15	11	6	17	23	13	12
total	40		26		106		193	
<u>Xhosa</u>								
urban	882	288	239	178	130	138	2117	1858
rural	361	448	160	97	234	172	535	126
total	1979		674		674		4636	
<u>Zulu</u>								
urban	19	7	60	23	6	14	748	228
rural	10	7	33	9	11	18	96	12
total	43		125		49		1084	

Home Language	Taung		Barkly West		Herbert		Kimberley	
	m	f	m	f	m	f	m	f
<u>Swazi</u>								
urban	-	-	-	-	1	-	52	52
rural	-	-	-	-	1	-	8	1
total	-	4	6	-	-	2		113
<u>Ndebele</u>								
urban	2	1	7	2	14	16	31	7
rural	-	-	1	-	2	-	2	-
total	3		10		32		40	
<u>Shangaan</u>								
urban	-	-	6	1	-	1	31	25
rural	2	-	4	2	5	1	5	2
total	2		13		7		63	
<u>Venda</u>								
urban	1	-	2	1	1	-	5	5
rural	3	-	1	-	-	-	1	-
total	4		4		1		11	
<u>English only</u>								
urban	-	2	-	-	-	-	7	7
rural	-	-	-	1	1	-	-	-
total	2		1		1		14	
<u>Afrikaans only</u>								
urban	10	-	92	12	36	27	358	97
rural	2	3	81	8	325	256	65	27
total	15		193		644		547	
<u>Unspecified and others</u>	44	37	128	134	767	781	1767	1760
Tswana	26918		12592		5942		20463	
Non-Tswana	3154		2416		3397		14807	
Totals								

TABLE NO. VIII

District Taung

AGE AND MARITAL CONDITION

(Census 1946)

Age	Single		Married		Widowed		Di- vor- ced		Unspe- cified		Total	
	m	f	m	f	m	f	m	f	m	f	m	f
0-4	2241	2332	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2241	2332
5-9	2179	1935	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2179	1935
10-14	1824	1604	2	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	1827	1604
15-19	1218	1026	12	100	-	4	-	-	5	5	1235	1143
20-24	531	337	130	468	2	13	-	2	15	2	678	922
25-29	345	213	391	712	2	27	-	6	7	9	755	967
30-34	156	82	512	637	7	24	1	5	2	4	678	752
35-39	90	33	647	567	7	33	-	4	3	7	747	644
40-44	44	23	533	534	10	69	2	3	5	2	594	631
45-49	25	29	523	303	21	51	1	5	4	1	574	387
50-54	20	9	403	251	21	106	1	5	1	-	446	371
55-59	12	40	311	72	14	115	1	42	3	1	341	270
60-64	12	12	267	196	23	155	2	1	2	8	306	371
65-69	5	3	266	82	17	120	-	1	5	6	293	212
70-74	6	5	179	62	33	127	1	-	-	-	219	194
75-79	-	6	114	37	23	46	-	-	4	4	141	93
80-84	1	-	73	14	11	52	2	-	-	4	87	70
85-89	-	3	29	4	14	29	-	-	-	1	43	37
90-94	-	-	21	1	5	17	-	-	-	1	26	19
95-99	-	-	7	1	3	6	-	-	-	-	10	7
100-104	-	-	1	-	1	1	-	-	-	-	2	1
over105	-	-	1	1	1	1	-	-	-	-	2	1
under 21	7580	7082	35	249	2	8	-	1	11	5	7728	7345
over 21	1030	711	4389	3806	213	988	11	73	57	50	5700	5628
Totals	8710	7793	4424	4055	215	996	11	74	68	55	13428	12973

District of Barkly West (rural population)

[illegible]

Literacy and knowledge of the official languages,
District of Taung, (Census of 1951)

<u>Setswana</u>	Taung	Barkly West	Herbert	Kimber- ley
Read & write	6189	2340	1520	13793
Read only	244	254	89	761
Neither	23636	12413	7188	21596
<u>English</u>				
Read & write	2653	1055	879	9657
Read only	218	168	71	790
Neither	27201	13884	8374	15822
<u>Afrikaans</u>				
Read & write	1699	474	7985	5239
Read only	138	120	563	808
Neither	25811	10277	8659	30222
Unspecified	-	1	-	-
<u>Language spoken</u>				
Nat.lang. only	24448	7123	2411	13080
Nat.lang. & English	1261	337	338	2408
Nat.lang. & Afrikaans	2144	6165	4540	9175
Nat.lang. & English Afrikaans	1831	1323	474	9760
English only	-	-	3	4
English & Afrikaans only	4	10	81	269
Afrikaans only	29	47	1330	1569
unspecified	-	3	57	5

High figures under "neither" or "Native language only" are due to the number of small children.

9 Synoptical table of population in relation to land and stock.

105 The following table No. X dealing with the districts of Taung and Herbert shows the ratios of population to land and stock owned by Bantu. The figures are from the population Census of 1960 (excluding absentees) and the figures for stock refer to the year 1964 as obtained from the stock inspector. The stock inspector's figures are based on inoculations, and are therefore more accurate than the usual agricultural census.

106 The table does not give particulars for the individual headmen of the tribal areas, or the locations in the south of the districts of Taung and Herbert. For their population figures see Table No. VI, and for their stock see table No. XII.

10 Land and Farms

107 The original Native Reserves in the district of Taung were granted to the Natives in terms of the British Bechuanaland Proclamation No. 62 of 1889. The total area of the Taung Native Reserve, which is, however, not surveyed, was originally about 222933 morgen in extent. 22581 morgen of ground occupied by various institutions was later deducted.

108 In 1893 title deeds for the following farms were granted in trust to certain chiefs as freeholds:

Farm	Morgen	Sq.roods	Trustees in deeds of grant
Modimong Nat.Res.	3150	339	Chief Molale
Highlands Nat.Res.	3028	3	do.
Witpan Nat.Res.	2635	178	do.
Springbok Nat.Res.	2634	-	Chief Galeshiwe of Phokwane
Zwartputs Nat.Res.	3046	123	do.
Panmure Nat.Res.	4195	111	chief Kgan-tlapane
Kokoming Nat.Res.	3081	483	do.
Tlapeng Nat.Res.	1485	-	do.
Tweelingspan Nat. Reserve	3101	136	do.

109 Later the Native reserves were defined again, viz. by British Bechuanaland Act No.41 and Proclamation No. 220 of 1895.

110 After the Langeberg Rebellion, also called Majeng War or Galeshiwe's War, which took place in 1896/7, the Phokwane area, 35 561 morgen in extent, was taken away from chief Galeshiwe by Act No. 17 and British Bechuanaland Proclamation No. 339, dated 30th August 1897.

111 The land comprising the Locations of the former Barkly West district, which was occupied by Bantu shortly before 1877, is vested in the S.A.

TABLE NO. X. SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF POPULATION IN RELATION TO LAND AND STOCK.

Tribes or Area	Population acc. to Census 1960	Tribal Areas in mor- gen sq. miles	Cattle Units	Population per sq. mile.	C.U. per 100 per- son	C.U. per sq. mile	
Tlhaping ba ga Phuduhutswana under Chief Mankuroane	33190	162770	539	37461	62	115	69
Tlhaping ba ga Maidi under Chief Motlhlabani	6716	50865	168.2	13401	40	200	80
Southern Loca- tions under various headmen	8936	66187	218.8	9530	41	107	43
Total for the dis- trict of Taung	48842	280624	928	57337	53	117	62
Schmidtstriff Loca- tion, district of Herbert under various headmen	2685	36453	120.5	4250	22	158	35

Native Trust as laid down in the Schedules to Act No. 27 of 1913 and Act No. 34 of 1927. Since the district boundary was changed in 1949, it has formed, together with Released Area No. 10, the southern part of the district of Taung. The area comprises:

Location	Farms	Extent in morgen sq.roods	
Lower Majeakgoro	NW 27	3 408	-
	NW 28	2 647	173
	NW 29	4 277	414
	total	10 333	
Upper Majeakgoro	NW 26	3 674	146
	NW 30	3 674	528
	total	7 349	
Sekging	NW 25	4 141	316
	NW 31	3 369	311
	total	7 511	
Seweding	NW 24	3 238	287
	NW 32	3 170	230
	total	6 409	
Mmamutla	NW 20	4 363	592
	NW 21	4 116	460
	NW 35	4 745	297
	total	13 226	
Driefontein	NW 45	4 594	45
Shaleng	NW 42	4 956	350
	NW 43	3 729	91
	total	8 686	
Majeng	NW 32	2 618	558
(by Act of 1913)	NW 59	2 282	

M'Puli's well	NW 60	2 040 mgn.
Hallton ptn.of	NW 62	1 961 "
Woodifield		1 864 "
Highlands ptn.of	NW 63	1 911 "
		total 12 678 mgn.

The total area of the southern locations is thus 66 187 morgen or 218.8 sq.miles in extent.

112 In 1932 the following farms were bought and allocated to the following tribes: in Released area No. 8: Thomeng, adjoining the Taung Native Reserve, 6 145 mgn. 310 sq.rds

Banksdrift, adjoining the Taung Native Reserve, 400 "

In Released Area No.9: Koppie Enkel, adjoining the area of the Tlhaping ba ga Maidi 3 889 mgn. 238 sq.rds

Total 10 434 " 548 "

113 By Act No.38 of 1934, thereof the first Schedule, provision was made for the Vaal-Hartz irrigation scheme, and by Act No. 27 of 1935 the farm Voorspoed was excised from the Taung Reserve, and an equivalent area, viz. 11 386 morgen, was bought and added to the Reserve.

114 After 1936 the S.A. Native Trust bought some farms, which were then placed under the administration of the tribes whose area they adjoined. Certain farms were bought to be given in exchange for the Kauwe Native Reserve in the district of Vryburg, which was 3 351 morgen in extent, and originally established by British Bechuanaland Proclamation No. 220 of 1895. By Proclamation No. 33 of 1959 the farms Bavianskloof and Sterkfontein were given in exchange for the Kauwe Reserve. These consist of the following portions:

Bavianskloof:	morgen	sq.rds.
portion 5 of ptn.Rauten	222	354
portion 6 of ptn.Rauten	222	359
portion remaining extent	515	67

	morgen	sq.rds.
portion Hamath	850	9
portion Smaldeel	700	1
portion 2/rem.ext.(Aton-vale)	430	351 1
Total	2 940 mg.	541 sq.rds.

Sterkfontein:

portion remaining extent	1 698	32
portion Fernhollow	699	275
portion Loch Lomond	1 025	-
Total	3 422 mg.	307 sq.rds.

the two farms: 6 362 morgen

115 The following Trust farms were also bought:

Vygeboomvlakte:	morgen	sq.rds.
portion Heimersvlei	350	391
$\frac{1}{2}$ Jackalsdraai No. 1	102	533
$\frac{1}{2}$ Ptn. of Jackalsdraai	72	261
$\frac{1}{2}$ Jackalsdraai No. 1	102	532
$\frac{1}{2}$ ptn. of Jackalsdraai	72	261
portion A	366	44
portion Wolvedans	500	-
portion Eensaamheid	350	387
portion Sukkes	353	128
portion Rauben	350	387
portion Putzonderwater	353	127
Total	3 325 mgn.	438 sq.rds.

Verona:

remaining extent 1 567 352

	morgen	sq.rds.
rem.ext. of western	1 554	1
Total	3 121 mgn.	353 sq.rds.

Roodepoort:

remaining extent	454	487
Smaldeel	489	1
De Rust, rem.ext	866	394
De Rust, Goedgevonden	600	1
Rooipoort	522	542

Total 2 933 mgn 225 sq.rds.

Middelrand:

portion 80 morgen.

116 There are 801 morgen of privately owned Bantu land in Released Area No. 10 on the eastern portion of Farm NW No. 15. Other Bantu owned portions on the farms NW Nos. 15 and 16 have been sold.

117 The present extent of the Bantu areas in the district of Taung can be calculated as follows:

Original area as defined in 1895 222 933 morgen

Subtract area taken away after
Galeshiwe's war (incl. 201 mgn.
of general dealers' sites) 35 561 morgen

balance 187 372 "

Add 7 morgen gained during the
exchange of Voorspoed. 7morgen

Add the Location of former
Griqualand West area. 66 187 "

Add Trust-purchased farms Thomeng,
Koppie Enkel and Bankdrift 10 435 "

Add farms bought in exchange for
Kaukwe Reserve, viz. Baviaans-
kloof and Sterkfontein 6 362 "

Add Trust-purchased farms
Vyeboomvlakte, Verona, Roode-
poort and portion of Middelrand 4 9460morgen

Add privately owned Native farm in
Rel. Area No. 10 801 "

Total area occupied by Bantu 280 624morgen

i.e. 928.12 sq.miles or 2404 sq.
Kilometres

118 In Released Area No. 10, there are the
following European owned farms (in 1960):

Farm	Portion	Owner
15 OP	Eierfontein	F. & R.A. Jooste
16 OP	Vorsterhof	A.P. Vorster
	Langverwag	P.L. van den Berg
	Brakpan	P.J. Booysen
17 OP	Jellfontein	M. Lindberg (manager J. Fourie)
18 OP	not inhabited	
15 NO	Slangfontein	B. Liebenberg
	Langverwagt	E. Cloete
16 NO	Sharrow	J. Jacobs
	Boomplaas	L. Olivier & H. Griesel
17 NO	Nooitgedacht	H. Griesel, M.J. van Staden & W.T. Voges
18 NO	Kookfontein	H. Wolf
	Kliphuis	D. Tolmay?
14 PQ	Hoekplaas	B. Oshry
15 PQ	Annaspan	M.J. van den Berg
16 PQ	not inhabited	
17 PQ	Vaalbosfontein	L. Jocum
18 PQ	Luckhoff	A.J. Botha
	Perdehoek	F. & D. Botha

Vaalboschhoek S.J. Botha & P. van
Wyk

36 NW Dingley Dell Jocum & J.F. Kirsten

37 NW, 38 NW

Roelfsfontein H. Tredoux

39 NW Fairview J. Jordaan

Welverdiend R. Sonnekus

40 NW Ooshoek R.H. Sonnekus & H. Fritz

Middelpan G. Coetzee

Uitkyk ?

41 NW Rietfontein van Heerden

Modderfontein G. Coetzee

119 There are only three European farms in the
district of Taung outside the Bantu areas, viz.
Pendomer (Tau 1.1.), Killarney (Tau 1.2), and Home
Rule (Tau 1.3).

120 The extent of the Locations in the Schmidts-
drift Reserve in the Herbert district, which
constitute Released Area No. 11, is shown in par. 606
the total being 36453 morgen 185 sq. roods or 120.5
sq. miles.

11 Tswana agriculture

121 The districts of Taung and Herbert are situated in a very dry part of the country, as can be seen from the rainfall figures in par. 23 and 24. Therefore dry land ploughing would be uneconomical and cause the fertile top soil to be blown away by the wind. However, the district of Taung is in the fortunate position of having water for irrigation. Apart from the irrigation land, the district is only suitable for stock raising. It is a matter of policy that a class of full-time Bantu farmers should be caused to evolve. To achieve this, the concept "economic unit" has been created. It is the farming unit on which a Bantu farmer and his family can be expected to make a reasonable living, and differ from place to place according to the agricultural potential of the place. In Taung an "economic unit" consists of 2 morgen (=1½ha) of irrigation land, expected to give 2-3 harvests per year, or of 24 cattle units. A cattle unit is 1 head of large stock or 6 head of small stock. The Bantu farmer himself likes to have lands and stock, although he is often not in a position to look after both these branches of his farming properly. Because of this preference, many holders of irrigation plots also keep stock, which is against the general economical policy. The stock gives them an average of 26% of their income.

122 Good sandy loam soils are to be found along the river beds. Most of the soil is a red loam, derived from dolorite, but in some parts it is mainly of a basaltic nature, and derived from quartzites. In the eastern parts, at Kokoming and Molelema and in the southern locations of the district the base is limestone. Diamond-bearing soils are to be found at Tlaping and on Home rule, and also towards the Hartz river south of Taung, below a layer of loam which is several feet thick. The country is stony in the western parts of the southern reserves and in the Manthe area, and is studded with bush and the hardy types of grass. The undulated plains between the hills and the rivers have better grazing. The hilly parts are more suitable for sheep raising. To-day with agricultural planning not begun yet people keep too many goats in the hilly parts. Often the proportion of cattle to sheep to goats is 1:1:3, whereas it should be 1:1:1. The grazing is classified as Kalahari thornveld and shrub-bushveld with acacia trees and vaalbos. Where there are no trees and shrubs, the grassveld consists mostly of sweet grasses and *Eragrostis rigitor*, while the

more mountainous parts have "steekgras" (*Aristida congesta*) and inbetween, red grass (medical triandra).

123 The conditions for the Southern Reserves are mentioned here because the descriptions below are given according to the individual Reserves. Before the planning for agricultural improvement began in 1954, these Reserves were overstocked. Due to uncontrolled grazing the better grasses had disappeared, and hard grasses and bitter Karoo grasses had taken their place. After stock limitation was imposed, the grasses improved again. The western parts of the Locations can be described as bushveld with shrubs edible to animals and trees which are mostly leguminous. In the eastern parts of these Reserves the grass is predominantly sweet, since the growth is controlled by grazing camps and rotational grazing. Towards the mountainous parts in the west, parts of which are heavily bushed, the following bushes are found: swarthak (*Acacia detinens*), withak (*Acacia spirocarpioides*); in the lower parts Vaalbos (*Tarchonanthus camphoratus*) and rosyntjiesbos (*Grevia cana*). In Driefontein kareebush (*Rhus lancea*) also occurs. Also the Majeng Location, the farms Hallton Highlands, Mpulis Well, and the eastern part of Woodfield, are hilly, and form the watershed between the Vaal and Hartz rivers. The same kinds of bush grow here, but in addition, towards the vleis, there are mimosa trees or "soet doring" (*Acacia cana*) and camel thorn tree (*Acacia giraffae*).

124 The northernmost part of the district, where the Tlhaping of the former Kauwe Reserve settled, i.e. on Bavianskloof and Sterkstfontein, is also within the area of the Gaapse Mountains, mentioned in connection with the southern Reserves in the chapter on geography. Two kloofs or valleys run from the mountains through the farms. There the soil is sandy and stony. The arable soil cannot be utilized, because of the low rainfall. All over this area there are small hills with a height of 30-40ft. This part has the lowest rainfall of the district, with an annual average of 16 inches. The grazing is good in this part of the district with grasses such as: *hyparrhenia*, *aristida*, *themedra*, *eragrostis*, *digitaria*, *chloris*, *cymbopogon*, *heteropogon* and *Schmidtia kalahariensis*. Shrubs and trees in this area are camel thorn, vaalbos, rosyntjiesbos, mimosa and karree.

125 For the protection of trees, forest regulations for the British Bechuanaland Reserves were

passed by Proclamation No. 257 of 30.10.1928. A forest reserve was already proclaimed (Procl. No. 1016) at Phokwane in 1898. By the Forest and Veld Conservation Act No.13 of 1941 and Act No.102 of 1946 the following trees are protected: Vaalbos (*Tarchonanthus camphoratus*) in Tswana: mohatlha or mathola; camel thorn (*Acacia giraffae*) in Tswana: mokala or mogotlho; mimosa (*Acacia cana*) in Tswana: manoasa; withaakdoorn (*Acacia spirocarpioides*) in Tswana: mushu; Swaarthakdoorn (*Acacia detinens*) in Tswana: monyeka-tau; wild olive (*Olea verucosa*) in Tswana: motholoare; karree bush (*Rhus lancea*) in Tswana: mokhidi or mosilabele; Witstam or witgatboom in Tswana: motlope or mopipi. Other bushes not mentioned above are: blue bush (*Royena pallens*) in Tswana: motlhaje, elendsboontjie (elephant-orchiza) Tswana: mositsane.

126 Water is obtained from river beds, pans and boreholes. There are 14 earth dams in the district of Taung for watering stock. A total of 211 boreholes had been sunk and equipped with a variety of gear, such as animal driven pumps, hand pumps, wind pumps and combustion engines. For the planning of any residential area it is essential that the water supply is established first. Six further boreholes are needed for household purposes, and 24 for animals.

127 The whole district is at present being planned agriculturally. Since the traditional land tenure system does not depend on clan-headmanships any more, the planning can proceed on a geographical basis. As in other districts, the area of a headman, a Bantu Location, or a group of farms, is planned to comprise one or more planning wards. A planning ward usually includes a residential area, a block of arable land, and 3-4 grazing camps. In this district, where there is no dry land farming, the planning wards do not include blocks of arable land. The system of rotational grazing has had the effect that whereas previously 9-10 morgen of grazing were required for one cattle unit, 5 morgen now suffice.

128 The areas of the tribal headmen were not always clearly defined, and disagreement as to the boundaries existed here and there. For the purpose of planning such boundaries had to be investigated and agreed upon by the headmen. The boundaries are now more clearly defined, so that boundary fences can be erected. Such planning is done in consultation with the local population and their headmen. Maps are drawn from aerial photographs by planning officers, and the vegetation studied. The water supply is essential, and is usually the nucleus for residential areas. After the completion and

implementation of agricultural planning, the stock carrying capacity will increase by 25%. A description of the planned areas under various headmen is given in the chapters on the various tribes.

129 Most Bantu areas in the dry West are overstocked, and the traditional Tswana attitude towards stock, viz. that quantity rather than quality counts, still exists. Such areas may be proclaimed Betterment Areas for which certain agricultural regulations are applicable. Usually the approval of a tribe is obtained before any planning or betterment operations are undertaken in its area. Betterment activities are directed towards combating soil erosion, eradicating certain weeds, limiting stock according to the available grazing, culling of poor quality stock, reducing the number of donkeys etc. At present there are 64000 cattle units in the Bantu areas of the district, which means that about 4.4 morgen of grazing per cattle unit are available. Ten betterment areas have been proclaimed in the district, and others may follow. Cattle culling has not been carried out yet, because other methods of increasing the grazing per cattle unit, such as more sales and the improvement of the grazing, are being carried out. Weeding is done by public labour, and the (litjies) cactus, which was plentiful in the river valleys, is eradicated by the Department. The Department also combats soil erosion and makes regulations for soil protection, e.g. to forbid the excavation of building sand from dongas sand-filled.

130 Bantu peasants increasingly make use of the irrigation scheme which has been laid out, and is controlled by the Department of Bantu Administration and Development. The blocks of irrigation land in the Taung scheme are: Mokgareng, Mokassa, "Smous" "Molale", "Jim Molale", "C. Moss", "Bogosing" and, Pudumong. Irrigation plots have an average size of 2 morgen and are allocated by the Bantu Affairs Commissioner. Plot holders are assisted by agriculturally trained Bantu advisers, for whom 26 posts exist in the district, and European agricultural officers and foremen control and manage the Scheme and the sale of the products. Nine Bantu water bailiffs are employed to look after the distribution of the irrigation waters. For the preparation of land, canals, roads etc. 15 tractors are in use, for which 14 Bantudrivers are employed, and there are 12 Bantu lorry drivers to do the transport. Department threshing machines serve the plot holders. Irrigation agriculture imposes many conditions with which the plot holders must comply. Such conditions are correct methods of cultivation and irrigation, the growing of the most suitable crops, application, of manure and

fertilizer, crop rotation, sowing at the best time, planting of only the approved kinds of trees and shrubs, eradication of weeds, the control of plant diseases, the correct choice of the number, kind and breed of live-stock to be kept on the plots, their care, manner of depasturing, disposal, disposal of their products and control of animals diseases, observation of correct irrigation, proper maintenance or construction of roadways, irrigation furrows, drains etc. The plot holder may not absent himself for longer than 14 days without the approval of the Superintendent of the Scheme.

131 There are two Irrigation Schemes in the district of Taung, the "Taung Irrigation Scheme" covering an area of 6000 morgen, of which 4750 morgen are under cultivation at present, and the "Majeng Irrigation Scheme" which is 300 morgen in extent and of which 185 morgen are ready for cultivation. The Taung Scheme will soon be extended by a further 300 morgen after canals have been on and other preparation have been completed. At present 1567 allocations have been made to plot holders. It takes time to teach the plot holders the new methods after their former experience with dry land ploughing. About 68% of them had no agricultural experience before plots were allocated to them. About 46% of them had 15 years or more of agricultural experience and 22% had less than 5 years' experience on dry land and irrigation plots together. Since 79% of the plot holders had no school education at all, it is all the more difficult for them to learn and understand. Only 79% of the plot holders do full time work on their plots, the others are temporarily absent. The work cannot be done by the families of the plot holders alone, and 97% of them hire labour, especially for the harvesting season. The baTswana get very little help from their women despite the fact that it was they who did the work on the fields when the first Europeans explored the country. Nowadays women are loth to do more work than is needed to look after the children and do the cooking.

132 The ultimate aim of the Irrigation Scheme is to settle 4000 plot holders, who will mainly live in villages near their arable land. It took 4 years to build all the canals. The scheme is 45 miles from the Vaal barrage at Fourteen Streams. Before the land could be allocated, it had to be levelled completely and to be subdivided into beds or "akkers" which are separated by raised earthen walls about 9 inches high. These walls ensure the proper flooding of the bed, and at the same time

prevent soil erosion. Hedges of poplar, firs and other trees were planted along the east-west boundaries of the plots to act as wind breaks. A plot is laid out in "akkers" of 30 feet x 300 feet with an average fall of 1 foot in 300. Approximately 300 miles of the small concrete canals will ultimately traverse the scheme. All along the main canal are feeders which draw out the water to supply the land immediately below the canal. The water is taken from the feeders by communities to facilitate distribution. Each community supplies roughly six 30 morgen (25 hectare) blocks of land with water. From here it goes to distribution furrows. A native plot holder is given 20 "akkers" which is equivalent to about 2 morgen (slightly less than two hectares). Nine Native rangers or water bailiffs guard the concrete canals, furrows, tree-belts and other property on the Native Trust land. In the adjoining villages, each plot holder has three "akkers" of 20-40 by 200 ft. for a vegetable garden and orchard, and the school has its own garden.

133 In 1963 a departmental sample census was taken (by Mr. C.N. Smit) of 10% of the plot holders, i.e. 145 who farm on 370 morgen in various areas of the irrigation Scheme. The aim was to establish the degree of success of irrigation farming by Bantu. (Percentage figures mentioned in par. 131 are also quoted from this report). The following table based on the 1962 harvest shows the importance of the various crops:

Crop	% of holders growing the crop	Proportion of crops acc. to area under cultivation	Production per morgen average (variation)	Average income per morgen in Rand
Wheat	97	32.2%	16.7 (13.8-20.1) bags	91.77
Lucerne	92	28.6%	7.4 (4.9-9.9) ton	106.12
Maize	90	14.3%	9.9 (7.7-13.8) bags	27.96
Peas	67	8.0%	6.2 bags	41.35
Peanuts	51	15.1%	10.8 (7.6-17.1) bags	103.50
Others (Lentils, Cotton, Kaffirbeans)	16	1.8%	-	41.36

The great variation in production results reflects the varying success of different farmers working under the same conditions. If one farmer can produce 20 bags of wheat per morgen, they all can, provided they work regularly and farm properly. This becomes especially clear if one notices that one plot holder produced 48 bags per morgen as against the lowest production of 2 bags per morgen by another. Irrigation land needs constant attention, but the men are often absent, and 21% of the plot holders are periodically absent from their plots. The above table also shows that lucerne, peanuts and wheat pay well, while the income from maize is small. It was also found that the method of maize cultivation was not satisfactory. The average bruto income of a plot holder from agriculture was R213.53 with a net profit of R158.67. The sample census also showed that the income from irrigation lands was R 30962, which was 74% of the 145 plot holders' total income and that a further R 10785 came from stock. The income from both sources was on the average, R288. R270-275 per annum was taken to be a reasonable income for an "economic unit", i.e. the amount needed to support a family. In the report it is suggested that a lower income would suffice. The agricultural officer at Majeng says that some plot holders have an income of over R600 per annum in spite of their lack of sufficient experience on these plots. At Taung nearly 21% earned over R400, about 37% had a bruto income of more than R300 while 63% earned well below this amount. Eleven non-farmers among the 145 plot holders had an average bruto income of R505.53, which is more than double that of plot holders who have no stock.

134 As for fibre plants, a beginning has been made with the growing of cotton under irrigation. In 1963, 8400 lbs. of cotton were harvested from 84 morgen. Fruit and vegetables were grown on 5 morgen, and 3000 lbs. produced.

135 The farmers sell their crops mainly through their local agricultural co-operatives at Taung, and the smaller one at Majeng, which are organised by the Department. It is obligatory to sell lucerne and lucerne hay through the co-operatives. Plot holders obtain seed and fertilizers through the co-operative. In 1963 453 bags of seed wheat, at R7.05 per bag and 20 180 lbs. of lucerne seed at 22c. per lb. were bought. In the same year, 1530 plot holders applied over 9000 tons of manure and 300 tons of fertilizers on 2300 morgen of land. Compost is made of weeds, greens and manure. The crop rotation cycle is usually 4 years of lucerne

followed by 4 years of various summer and winter crops. The co-operative at Taung has storage tanks silos for 1800 bags of grain and sheds for 22000 bales of lucerne. In 1963 the co-operative at Taung marketed:

12 758 bags of wheat to the value of	R 77 160
5 142 bags of peanuts to the value of	R 46 077
5 000 tons of lucerne to the value of	R 37 654
Total value	R 160 891

136 For the irrigation plots and neighbouring land there is a selling scheme for dairy products. One co-operative on the Trust Project Camp and 10 small private co-operatives with 160 members together handle over one million gallons of milk per annum valued at R15 464 from 549 milk cows.

137 Table No.XI below shows the agricultural Census figures for 1963 for the irrigation land in the district.

138 Stock raising is the basis of the dry land economy in the district of Taung. As the agricultural census indicates, some areas have more small stock especially goats, often because of the local grazing conditions. Numbers of stock given in Table No.XII below are from the agricultural Census of 1963, and the figures for 1964 were supplied by the stock inspector.

139 There is a stock breeding scheme on the Taung agricultural depot farm (also called Project) occupying 60 morgen. The scheme provides specially bred bulls milk cows and pigs, of which 28,40 and 30 respectively were sold in 1963.

140 Male stock of inferior quality are castrated, the number amounting to 3120 animals in 1963. A general improvement in the quality of stock was noticeable during the last few years. Stock was sold in 1963 at 13 auctions. The following sales took place:

1471 head of large stock for	R 53 819
942 head of small stock for	R 4 838
890 pigs for	R 5 585
total value of sales	R 64 242

Two European and two Bantu butcheries handled 1250 head of large stock and 3550 head of small stock. This does not include stock slaughtered in private Bantu households. It is intended to hold more stock auctions in order to encourage the Bantu to reduce the number of their stock. A further income from by-products of stock raising is the sale of hides, skins and wool. In 1963 635 hides, 4500 skins, and 15 000 lbs. of wool, were sold for R5000.

141 Stock diseases are the same as in the neighbouring district, viz. anthrax, liver fluke, billiary fever, gall diseases, blue tongue in sheep, and internal parasites. Annual inoculations are given against the milt sickte or anthrax. The annual loss of stock is about 50 head of large stock and 120 head of small stock, losses being fairly high among cows and calves. Horse flies are fairly common.

142 A fish breeding scheme is planned, but has not yet started.

143 No forestry activities existed in the district before the commencement of agricultural planning. Sixty-seven morgen of Eucalyptus Saligna plantations have been established, and also 67 morgen of indiginous bush. Wood is sold as fire wood in the locations.

144 Since the district of Taung is a centre for Bantu agriculture, although mainly irrigation agriculture, an agricultural school for the ba Tswana home land has been established there. It was opened on 8 February, 1965. Fourteen houses have been erected for the teaching staff. This school is combined with a school for chiefs' sons, which was opened in January 1965.

TABLE NO.XI AGRICULTURAL CENSUS OF 1963 FOR THE IRRIGATION LAND IN THE DISTRICT OF TAUNG:

	Taung Irrigation Scheme		Mageng Irrigation Scheme
Total area	6000 morgen		300 morgen
Area under cultivation	4750 morgen		185 morgen
No. of plot holders	1503 morgen		64 (34 producing)
Vacant plots	42 morgen		29
Crops	Mgn. cultivated	Total production	production per morgen
Taung Irrigation Scheme			
Wheat	1400	25 487 bags	18.2 bags
Lucerne	996	7 968 tons	8 tons
Peanuts	710	6 390 bags	9 bags
Maize	460	3 680 bags	8 bags
Peas	500	3 250 bags	6.5 bags
Kaffir beans	408	1 532 bags	4 bags
Majeng Irrigation Scheme			
Wheat	60	720 bags	12 bags
Lucerne	12	120 tons	10 tons
Peanuts	36	196 bags	5.4 bags
Maize	10	80 bags	8 bags
Peas	1	6 bags	6 bags
Kaffir beans	5	20 bags	4 bags

TABLE XII CENSUS OF STOCK 1964, DISTRIK TAUNG

Headman of area Counting area	C.U.	Cattle	Sheep	Goats	Horses	Pigs
St.Kasienyane Taung Stat						
Hos.Lekgetho Molale	1744	1197	730	2004	?	197
Manokwane R.S.Rashupe						
Matlapaneng Motlabeng	2780	1553	2987	3147	?	?
Th.S.Mankuroane Mokasa I	4026	2363	2437	3111	553	351
Mokasa II St.M.Mankuroane						
Modimong Marubiseng						
Tshobeng @ Kolong	6586	3213	6214	9145	301	234
Khibitswana Highlands @ Hellingpan						
Br.I.Kg.Mahura Magopela						
Itireleng Pudumong	3728	1583	4182	6543	114	153
J.Mahura Dryharts incl. Verona						
Myra Baviaanskloof	5322	2697	3472	5829	765	558
Roodepoort K.K.Saku						
Maphoitsile Magogong II	2661	1101	1749	5912	28	?
Modutung I B.G.Smous						
Old Taung Smousstat	510	398	248	313	?	?
F.M.Mabatshane Banksdrift	941	643	425	551	103	59
Daumas Motsweding	2138	1260	1515	2567	62	?
M.Seoloseng Vaaltyn Lcn.	1151	443	818	1998	145	84
Bayers Halt S.M.Ganoke						
Thamasikwa @ Buxton @	1918	901	842	3412	166	102
Norlim Thomeng						
St.Ntokwe Mokgareng I						
Mokgareng II	4966	2806	3709	3130	792	247
Batlhaping ba ba Phuduhu- tswana.	37461	20158	29328	47662	+3029	+1985

Headman of area Counting area	C.U.	Cattle	Sheep	Goats	Horses	Pigs
G.Kgantlapane Manthe Pitsong Morokweng	5029	1709	5025	9874	314	167
B.M.Kgantlapane Molelema Longaneng Sedukung Dikhuting Mothanthanyane	3881	1774	5305	3852	275	19
M.Kgantlapane Tweelingspan Kokoming Koppie-enkel	2519	1127	3792	1217	410	94
K.F.Sengwedi Tlapeng Dipuding Modutung II	1972	756	1732	3630	144	57
Batlhaping ba ga Maidi, total	13401	5366	15854	18573	1143	337
Upper Majeakgoro	1045	447	1535	1170		57
Lower Majeakgoro	1325	858	872	1335		26
Sekging	722	476	238	893		40
Seoding	1147	852	99	883		99
Mamutla	1655	661	2892	1691		77
Shaleng	848	550	133	1002		71
Driefontein	522	287	189	894		48
Majeng	2266	1269	2820	1514		130
Southern Loca- tions total	9530	5400	8778	9382		448
District of Taung Totals	63902	30924	53960	75617	4620	over 3000

145 The Schmidtsdrift Reserve is situated in a very dry area and therefore no dry land ploughing is done. This area has been a Betterment area since 1939 (Proclamation No. 31/1939 and Gov. Notice No. 1095 of 1946. Even for stock breeding the conditions are poor, being good for neither large nor small stock. A large area (4740 morgen) which was completely denuded of grass has been restored by subsoil ploughing and covering the ploughed area with bush so that the grass could grow. The number of donkeys was drastically reduced. Soil erosion was stopped by filling in dongas and by contour ploughing. Grazing camps were demarcated and 281 398 yards of fencing erected. The land was levelled so that the rainwater would flow over the grazing land instead of flowing down the dongas. The inhabitants were encouraged to buy more large stock. The number of boreholes has increased to 35 after 9 additional ones were sunk. Each of the 5 Locations has dipping tanks.

146 In 1959/60 the population of nearly 4000 owned the following stock:

Cattle, incl. calves	490
Equines	210 (21 horses, 181 donkeys)
Sheep	7 505
Goats	10 804
Pigs	16
Fowls	4 500.

This is equivalent to 4362 cattle units, i.e. 8 morgen per cattle unit. The grazing needed for one cattle unit is over 9 morgen. A goat raising scheme was started in 1958 with special quality rams belonging to the Trust, and a sheep raising scheme was planned. For ten years cattle culling was done with good results. Poor stock had to be sold for slaughtering. The agricultural planning and control was carried out by one European agricultural officer and 7 Bantu rangers. Stock sales fetched about R6000 per year, and will be fetching more by now.

147 There was no or little co-operation in agricultural matters from the younger generation of inhabitants. One third of the population was able to make a living from their stock, and two thirds

worked in the diamond mines, the limeworks of ULCO, and at Silverstreams and Campbell. The alluvial diamond diggings had a constant demand for labour. There is not much labour migration to Kimberley.

148 When the tribes still tilled their lands they grew the following kinds of kaffir corn or mabêlê: tshabasiê (reddish grain) and mpapetlhe (tall plant, quick growing, white corn), both used for making beer, and ses-week (a very quick growing short kind) and voorkloof (a bird proof kind). The kinds of sweet cane (ntshe) grown were mpatlatsane and sepotswane. They grew pumpkins (lephutse), marrows, makatane (which can be dried and stored), and melons, such as sekgalagadi and sekgoa (European). The names for their beans are sekatlwane, gopolanare, mothananyane and ditlodi (chinese peas). Women collect wild vegetables, such as balale which grow under trees, and thêpê which is collected by all the Tswana tribes. The roots of the motlapi tree are roasted to make a kind of coffee, or eaten raw. Teas are also made from gauba and motlhagala. Motlhagala is a plant that grows in trees. The chief had to give permission for the ploughing season to begin, which was usually in August for the first ploughing, and in November for the second ploughing. He also had to give permission for the harvesting to begin, but not for grazing in the harvested fields. Crops were often damaged because fields were not fenced off.

12 Social Customs

149 It would require a separate publication to do justice to the social customs of the Tswana. Therefore, in previous books of this series, only the outstanding features of the social system were described. See: "The tribes of Mafeking District, Ethnological publications No. 32, Pretoria 1955 par. 154-186; "The tribes of Vryburg Distrik "Ethnological publication No. 46, Pretoria 1959, par. 97-102; "The tribes of the district of Kuruman and Postmasburg" Ethnological publications No. 49, par. 115-120. More detailed descriptions are published in "A Handbook of Tswana Law and Custom" by I. Schapera, London 1938, referring mainly to the Tswana in Botswana, and "Die politischen und gesellschaftlichen Verhältnisse der Sotho-Tswana by P.L. Breutz, Hamburg 1941.

150 Statistical data concerning the distribution of the population according to sex, marital state, and age, are given in table No. VI and VIII. Whether newly married couples have a home of their own, nowadays depends very much on the economic position of the couples concerned, although many brides still live with their parents until the first child is born. Family bonds are, of course, not as strong as they used to be. The status of women in society is intimately connected with their capacity to bear children. Traditionally they were perpetual minors, but today emancipation follows when they are able to work for wages. The old system whereby a substitute wife (seantlo) was married in order to bear children for a childless woman does not seem to have been as common among the Tlhaping as among other Tswana tribes. It is still common practise that a man should marry his cross-cousin, ortho-cousin, or even a more distant relative, even if the marriage is monogamic. When a man marries a distant relative, it is seldom, evident that she is his relative.

151 Though circumcision schools (bogwêra and bojale) are still held occasionally, ranking of lineage groups is less prominent than among the Transvaal Tswana. The reason may be the deterioration of the clan-system after the Langeberg Rebellion and the consequent disorganized mode of settlement, and the lack of chiefly control over the tribes for many years. A list of regiments, which are formed at the conclusion of the initiation rites, is given elsewhere. See par. 201, 425.

152 The political system, which is also described in the literature, mentioned above is given below in section 10 of the description of each of the different chieftainships and headmanships. The headmen are Government appointed and not clan-heads as in the olden time, but the position of these headmen has become hereditary, especially where they are related to the chief's house. The chief must decide about the succession of a headman, but he will take the opinion of the local population into consideration. Only where there is no chief the people elect their headman, for which custom makes no provision. But also here the inhabitants usually follow a system of inheritance if the heir is suitable. In the southern locations excluding Majeakgoro, the forefather of Headman Jantjie, in Manyding in Kuruman district, was chief over this area before the Langeberg Rebellion. This part of the district has no chief any more, and the administrative system is therefore rather artificial. The Tlhaping settled in the Taung area fairly late, and whereas the original Tlhaping country still had a distinct clan-system, only some of them came to Taung. Those which came were mainly the royal clans. A few other sections of the baTlhaping such as the ba ga Molehe, ba ga Maruping, ba ga Moduana, baTshweng etc. also came. Where a chief controls a distant outpost of his tribe, which may have inhabitants from various clans, he usually appoints a son or another relation to look after this new area. The origin of some of the headmanships goes back to this system of control, as was the case with Molale, Mankuroane, Mahura, Saku and Kgantlapane. They are not just Government headmanships originating from the administrative system introduced by the British in 1884. We also find that the tribe of chief Mankuroane spread out and extended its area. The new sub-areas of the tribe at Taung in particular do not have chief's relatives as headmen.

153 The system of Government appointed headmen also contributed to the fact that the clan heads, as far as they still exist, have no political function any more. In other Tswana tribes the tribal council is composed of clan-heads and some of the chief's relatives according to custom. The problem and functioning of the council system are described in the article "Tswana tribal government to-day" by P-L. Breutz in Sociologus 1958, No. 2, Berlin which was reprinted in BANTU, May 1959. An older source is "Stamregering by the Tlhaping" by F.J. Language, Stellenbosch 1943. The Tribal Authorities, for which provision is made in the Bantu Authorities Act, were devised to retain the traditional form of tribal government in a slightly modified form adapted to modern conditions.

13 Beliefs, Churches and Schools.

154 The traditional beliefs are not described here because those items of traditional belief which I happened to come across are recorded in the books: "The tribes of Mafeking district" par. 187-202 and "The tribes of Vryburg district" par. 43-115, and because the material for "Religion in a Tswana chiefdom" by B.A. Pauw, was mainly collected in the Taung district. In the southern parts of the Tswana homelands the traditional religious and other spiritual conceptions have disappeared to a greater extent than in other Tswana areas.

155 Missionary activities among the Tswana began in the neighbouring districts of Vryburg (Dithakong and Bothithong in the south) and Kuruman, where the London Missionary Society missionaries Evans and Hamilton worked. Read and Moffat moved with chief Mothibi to Maruping in 1817 and down to the Kuruman River in 1824. For the history of the society's work among the Tlhaping see "The Tribes of the districts of Kuruman and Postmasburg", Ethnological Series No. 49, par. 122-125. The following Missionary Societies work in Taung district: The London Missionary Society, the Methodist Church of South Africa, the Church of the Province, the Roman Catholic Church, the African Methodist Church, die Nederduits gereformeerde Bantoekekerk, the Hervormde Kerk, the Congregational Church, the Seventh Day Adventists, the Berlin Lutheran Mission, the Native Independent Congregational Church, the Full Gospel Church, and the Apostolic Faith Mission.

156 The London Missionary Society was also the first to work in Taung, after the baTlhaping sections had moved to Taung accompanied by their missionary Rev. Ross. In 1846 the Tlhaping moved to Mmamusa (i.e. Schweizer Reneke) again accompanied by Rev. Ross. When they returned to Taung a few years later, however, Rev. Ross left the tribe. In 1868, when diamonds were discovered, the mission station was opened again.

157 The Anglican Church served chief Gale-shiwe's tribe from about 1891. In 1895 the Roman Catholic Church came to Taung from Basutoland, the first missionary here being Father Porte. The present church was built in 1924, when Father Bausche was assisted by a Tswana priest, Choeu, and a coloured priest, Munnik. Some places in the Native reserves, such as Nkabang, Vaaltyn, Motswe-ding and Maganeng, are regularly visited by a priest who is stationed at Jan Kemp. There are about 8000 Roman Catholics in the district.

158 The following table No. XIII shows where the different Churches in the district of Taung work, or have been granted church sites by the Department of Bantu Administration and Development.

159 Many schools which were established by the missionary societies are to-day controlled by the Department of Bantu Education. The Tswana play an active part in Educational matters through the school committees, which consist of parents, and through the school board. The approximately 41 schools of this district fall within the area of the Divisional School Board or inspectorate of Vryburg.

160 Table No. XIV below indicates the schools in the districts of Taung and Schmidtsdrift.

O = church	London Missionary Soc.	Methodist Church of S.A. (Wesleyan)	Church of the Province (Church of England)	Roman Catholic Church	African Methodist Church	Nederduits Ger. Bantoe Kerk	Congregational Church	Seventh Day Adventists	Berlin Lutheran Mission Church	Native Independent Congregational Church	Full Gospel Church	Apostolic Faith Mission	Church of Christ
BaTlhaping ba Phuduhutswana Taung (Stat & Station)	0	00	00	0									
Matlapaneng (Mokgareng II) Choseng		0									0		
Mokassa I & II Colin Moss	00			0	0		0	0					
Modimong Marubiseng	0			0									
Magopêla Pudimoe, Myra Motlhwareng Pudimoe	0	0						0					
Dryharts Kgobadi		0		0									
Magogong Mapoitsile Bogosing Mothanthanyane Moduting	0		0	0		0							
Smous Stat old Taung	0				0								
Banksdrift Tlapeng Motšweding	0							0					
Vaaltyn	0												
Thamasikwa Buxton		0		0		0							
Mokgareng I & II	0			0									
Manthe Pitšong	0			0						0			
Tlapeng Modutung	0			0	0								
Molelema Kokomeng	0			0									
Matseng Tweelingspan	0										0		
Lower Majeakgoro	0			0									
Upper Majeakgoro	0	0						0					
Sekging			0										
Seoding	0			0									
Mmamutle	0		0					0					
Driefontein	0												
Shaleng	0			0									
Majeng	0	0	0	0									
Schmidtsdrift Location No. 1 & 2	0						0						
do. No. 3					0				0		0		
do. No. 4			0		0								
do. No. 5		0											
do. No. 6	0	0	0					0					

TABLE NO. XIV

DISTRICT OF TAUNG.

List of Schools (figures for 1963)

Place and (headman)	final standard	No. of teachers	Approx. No of pupils
Taung (chief Mankuroane)	higher prim. & secondary	5	230
Matlapaneng Locn. (Rashupe S.R. Mankuroane)	VI	8	540
Mokasa No. I	IV	3	215
Mokasa No. II (Th. S. Mankuroane)	IV	2	150
Magopêla Lcn, No. 12	VI	6	370
Myra (Brown L. Kg. Mahura)	IV	3	260
Modimong Lcn. No. 26 & Marubiseng (Stanley M. Mankuroane)	IV	2	240
Dryharts or Kgobadi	VI	7	470
Baviaanskrans	B	1	60
Moitsemang (Jerry M. Mahura)	II	2	135
Magogong Lcn. No. 11	VI	7	410
Mathanthanyane	IV	2	130
Mapoetsile (Kobane K. Saku)	IV	3	195
Smous-Stat/Old Taung Location No. 24	IV	3	180
Matolong (Botlhasitse Stanley Smous)	IV	2	130
Banksdrift/Tlapeng Lcn. No. 1	B	1	75
Harts River (Molema Frank Mabatsane)	IV	5	400
Vaaltyn Lcn. No. 33 (Piet Seoloseng)	II	2	154

INTRODUCTION

Place and (headman)	final standard	No. of teachers	Approx.no. of pupils
Thamasikwa, Buxton Locn. 30 (John Têio Ganoke)	VI	8	500
Mokgareng Location	IV	2	170
Nkabang (Stanley Ntokwe)	VI IV	6 3	360 200
<u>Ba ga Maidi</u>			
Manthe Lcn.14	VI	6	370
Pitšong/Mission (George G.Kgantla- pane)	IV	2	155
Molelema Locn.22 (Benj.Mogonono Kgan- tlapane)	-	-	-
Tweelingspan Locn. No.32	II	2	144
Matsheng Kokomeng (Hezekiel M. Kgantlapane)	IV	3	230
Tlapeng & Modutung Lcn. No.31 (Morwa Christ. Sengwedi) mission school	?	?	?
<u>Locations in former Barkly West District</u>			
Lower Majeakgoro (North) (Elias Lechute Pampier)	V	4	270
Upper Majeakgoro (south) (formerly Ntsekang/ Matšwe)	VI	5	320
Sekging Location (John Motekeg Sehemu)	II	1	115
Seeding Location (Galotlhomelwe N.Babuseng)	IV	3	204
Driefontein Location (Tanaka Solomon Marumoagae)	VI	5	300

INTRODUCTION

place and (headman)	Final standard	No. of teachers	Approx.no. of pupils
Mamutla Location	VI	4	190
Losaseng	II	1	70
Gataote (George Kgama Mothibi)	II	1	50
Shaleng Location & Witkoppies (David Leteletse Moteletsi)	IV	3	180
Majeng Location (Frank Molanoka)	VI	6	350
<u>Schmidtsdrift Reserve</u>			
Baviaanskrants Lcn. 1 & 2 (Thomas Leburu)	IV	3	c.200
Boomplaats Lcn. 3 (Coenraad Cedras)	VI	3	
Schmidtsdrift Lcn. 4 (Hendrik Phetlho)	IV	3	
Plaatdrift Lcn.5 (Klein Martins Cedraas)	VI	3	
Sehunelo Lcn.6 (Kl.Daniel Sehunelo)	IV VI	2 2	

161 A school for the sons of Tswana chiefs, headmen and councillors, combined with a school for agriculture, was opened at the beginning of 1965. In addition to the usual school curriculum, the students undergo very elaborate courses in Bantu administration and Bantu law and custom, after the completion of which they acquire a diploma in administration. The entry qualification for the pupils is a junior certificate, but the courses are of college standard.

14 Description of settlements, material culture, and dress.

162 Names of villages are given below in section 5 under each of the tribes described, and are also shown on the map of the district. Although it is Tswana custom to settle closely together in a compact village, the southern Tswana have for the past 100 years, preferred to decentralise. East of the Railway line and the Dryharts River the villages are densely populated, while in the western parts the people live more scattered. Agricultural planning makes provision for closer settlements. In the olden days, until about 30-40 years ago, most of the huts were round and had conical roofs. Since then 2-3 roomed rectangular houses with round huts as outbuildings, have taken their place. Grass roofs have mostly made way for corrugated iron. As a result of these changes the Tswana should find it easy to adapt themselves to the proposed closer settlements. In recent years, many Tswana having learnt the western way of building, and even having become building contractors, the richer people have houses which are not much different from European middle class houses.

163 The houses and settlements are not different from those in the district of Vryburg, as described in "The tribes of Vryburg district", Ethnological Publications No.46, Pretoria 1959, par. 129-133. The modern agricultural planning makes provision for residential areas with a sufficient water supply, and building sites large enough to include a kitchen garden. Where possible existing villages are included in such residential areas, and the new houses are far superior in quality to the older ones. Relatives and neighbours are still invited to assist with the building of houses and cattle kraals, except in the case of the more expensive houses, which are built under supervision of a Bantu building contractor. Protective medicines are still applied to houses and kraals.

164 Not much is left of the original material culture. To-day furniture, household utensils, and dress are to a large extent European.

15 Economics.

165 As in the other districts of the Northern Cape Province, the economy is based on cattle farming. The rainfall is not sufficient for dry land ploughing. Agriculture is described in chapter 11. Many people, about 4000 to 4500, obtain additional earnings usually in the form of corn, as harvest helpers in Transvaal districts and in the Oranje Free State. Others are employed with Bantu and European irrigation farmers. About 1200 people work on their irrigation plots, over 300 workers are employed by the Bantu Affairs Department for the Irrigation Scheme, and about 1600 work on European-owned irrigation farms.

166 Wage earners who do regular work, and are not connected with their families in the Reserves, will move into a new Bantu township at Magogong. The mining recruiting corporation arranges for contracts for work in gold mines for about 1200-1400 workers annually, and about 400 to 500 workers go to other mines in the Klerksdorp and Kimberley areas. About 200 workers are locally employed, or drift to nearby secondary industries, while about 100 are employed at the Railway Station. The middle class is made up of about 500 teachers, clerks, hawkers, millers, cobblers and waters. Over 100 workers are employed in the administration of the tribes, about 150-200 are employed with farmers and traders, about 150 work on roads or in gangs of the Divisional council, and about 300 in the works of the Northern Lime Company at Buxton. All these workers formed a local labour force of nearly 7000 in 1960, and if the temporary harvest workers are included, the total is about 11000. It can be assumed that the number of employable males is between 13000 and 15000.

167 The district is served by various kinds of businesses at the following places:

General Dealers at:

Dryharts (2)	Fernhollow	Matlapaneng
Pudumoe	Modimong	Nkabang
Tlapeng (2)	Magopêla	Mokgareng
Taung Stat	Taung	Shaleng
Taung Station	Mokassa (2)	Thamasikwa
Thoming	Manthe	Magogong
Motšweding	Bankdrift	Upper Majea-kgoro

Sekging	Seoding (cancelled)	Myra
Driefontein	Shaleng (cancelled)	Mmamutla
Majeng (2)	Maphoitsile	Molelema
Butchers at:		
Buxton	Motšweding	Upper Majeakgoro
Taung Village/abattoir		
Cafes, Eating houses at:		
Taung	Taung Station	Buxton
Manthe(eating house)		
Millers at:		
Matlapaneng,	Sedukung	
Baker at:		
Buxton		
Garages at:		
Taung Station (2)		
Blacksmiths at:		
Taung village	Taung Station	
The Bantu Townships at Magogong and Majeakgoro will have their own business centres, in which only Bantu will be permitted to have shops.		

16 Health

168 The district has had districts surgeons serving the Bantu population since 1896. The tribe at Manthe has a clinic, and there is also one at Buxton. Each has a permanent Bantu Sister, and is regularly visited by the district surgeon. The southern reserves have no clinic, because of a lack of interest in tribal matters, which is due to the fact that there is no chief for the whole area. In the Taung area there is the St. Konrad's Mission Hospital.

169 The St. Konrad's Hospital belongs to the Roman Catholic Mission, and was opened as a small hospital in 1923. It was extended, mainly between 1935 and 1940, a Hospital Board was formed in 1941, and a further wing for Tuberculosis treatment was opened in 1963. In 1964 5 914 patients were treated in bed, and 15 813 outpatients were treated. The cases treated in bed were: 822 surgical, 3 277 medical, 201 chronic diseases, 116 orthopaedic, 484 maternity, and 980 infectious and Tuberculosis cases. There are 325 beds. The staff consists 1 medical and 1 surgical doctor, 20 European sisters, and 100 Bantu, including sisters, nurses, midwives and student nurses.

170 The view of the Tswana people on health and disease are in the main still traditional. They still believe that disease is caused by ancestor spirits who are offended by broken tabus, or that it is caused by witchcraft. Therefore diviners are usually consulted first to establish the cause of the disease and its remedy. It might be found necessary to re-establish good relations with the ancestor spirits. Divination to establish the cause of disease is sometimes done by means of leaves floating on water. But this is a rare exception since the Tswana medicine-men usually use divining bones, called ditaola. After the cause of a disease has been discovered, patients may either seek to be cured by a medicine-man using medicine or magic, or by European medicines.

171 Maternity cases are regarded as natural. Therefore mothers usually go for a medical examination one month before giving birth. However, even if the child is born in the hospital, the mother will still confine herself to her hut for 3 months, because she believes the spirits can harm her newly born baby easily, especially before it has been given a name. Insanity is believed to be possession by an evil spirit, and tuberculosis is not believed to be caused by germs. The maternal grandmothers usually decide the course to be

followed in the treatment of a patient. They often warn their family not to use European medical assistance which, she says does not agree with their traditional conceptions about witchcraft and the spirits of the dead. If an operation must be performed, the intimate family council will decide about the matter, and before it is done, they must sign a form of consent. However, there is a better understanding nowadays.

17 Sources

173 This book is based on material obtained from the tribes and their sub-sections in 1959 and 1964, and on material in departmental files. The Bantu Commissioners and their staff gave much valuable assistance.

Literature:

Anderson, A.A. "Twenty-five years in a waggon (1863-1888)". London 1888.

Bailie, A.C. "Report on the general features of the interior of South Africa." Royal Geographical Society 48, 1878 p. 287-93.

Bain, A.G. "Journals of A.G. Bain" (1854) van Riebeeck Society No. 30, Cape Town 1949.

Barrow, John "Travels into the interior of Southern Africa." 2 vols. London 1806.

Breutz, P.-L. "Die politischen und Gesellschaftlichen Verhältnisse der Sotho-Tswana", Hamburg 1941.

British Bechuanaland, "Correspondence relative to the transfer of British Bechuanaland to the Cape Colony." London 1896 p. 34.

British Bechuanaland, "Report of the Commissioners appointed to Determine Land Claims and to effect a land Settlement in British Bechuanaland". London 1886 p.97.

Broadbent, G.A. narrative of the first introduction of Christianity amongst the Barolong tribe of Bechuanas, South Africa. London 1865.

Brown, T.J. "Among Bantu nomads", London 1926.

Burchell, W.K. "Travels in the interior of Southern Africa." London Vol. I 1822 Vol. II, 1824.

Campbell, J. "Travels in South Africa", Vol. I, London 1815.

Campbell, J. "Reisen in Süd-Africa" Weimar 1823.

Chapman, J. "Travels in the Interior of South Africa" 2 vols. London 1868

Colonial Reports. - Annual for 1893-4 "British Bechuanaland" London 1895 p.55.

- Cooke, H.B.S. A remarkable forecast from the Taung Skull by Dr. Broom in 1925. S.A. Journal of Science. March 1960 p.75-77.
- Dennison, "History of Stellaland" 1828 Department of Interior Archaeological Survey, series No. VI "Early man in the Vaal River Basin" Pretoria 1948.
- Ellenberger, D.F. and MacGregor, J.C. "History of the Basuto", London 1912.
- Fritsch, G. "Die Eingeborenen Süd Afrikas (1963-6)" Breslau 1872
- Harris, W.C. "The wild sports of Southern Africa", London 1844.
- Horne, C.S. "The story of the London Missionary Society 1795-1895", London 1894.
- Holub, Dr. Emil "Sieben Jahre in Süd-Afrika", Wien 1881.
- Holub, Dr. Emil "von der Capstad ins Land der Maschukulumbé, Reisen in Südlichen Afrika in den Jahren 1883-87, von Dr. Emil Holub" 2 vols. Wien 1890.
- Hop, Hendrik, "Tagebuch über die Reise des Kapitäns Hendrik Hop nach dem Cross-Namaland 1761-62, Mitteilungen aus den deutschen Schutzgebieten 1915, and van Riebeeck Society No. 28 Cape Town 1947.
- Language, F.J. "Herkoms en geskiedenis van die Tlhaping" African Studies Vol. I p.115-131 1942
- Leeuw, A. "The totem of the Barolong tribe" Ms. No. 475 N.A.D. Ethnological Section.
- Lichtenstein, Hinrich "Reisen in Südlichen Afrika in den Jahren 1803, 1804, 1805 in 1806" Berlin 1812 Vol. II.
- Lichtenstein, Henry "Travels in Southern Africa in the years 1803, 1804, 1805 and 1806" London 1812-15. Van Riebeeck Society No. 10, 11, 2 vols.
- Mackenzie, J. "Austral Africa" 2 Vols. 1887.
- Maingard, L.F. "The Briquea and the ethnic origin of the Batlhaping" S.A. Journal of Science Vol. XXX Oct. 1933, p.597-602.

- Massie, R.G. "The Native tribes of the Transvaal", (War office) London 1905.
- Meteorological Office, Department of Irrigation, "Rainfall normals", Pretoria 1939.
- Moffat, R. "Missionary labours and scenes in Southern Africa" London 1842.
- Mogorosi, B. "The batlhaping Ms. No. 226 N.A.D. Ethnological Section.
- Moroka, J.S. "Chief of the baRolong" S.A. Outlook 1940 p.229
- Native Affairs Office, Cape Town (Ms. written by A.N. Macfadyen) "Memorandum on the Administration of Native Affairs in British Bechuanaland" Cape Town 1909 p.18
- Schapera, I. "A handbook of Tswana law and custom". London 1938.
- Schapera, I. "Tribal legislation among the Tswana of the Bechuanaland Protectorate" London, 1943.
- Schapera, I. "A short history of the baNgwaketse" Africa Studies, I, 1, 1942 p.1-26.
- Sillery, A. "The Bechuanaland Protectorate" London 1952.
- Smith, Dr. A. "The diary of Dr. Andrew Smith 1834-36", van Riebeeck Society No. 21, 2 vols, Cape Town 1940.
- Stow, G.W. "The Native Races of South Africa", London 1905.
- Theal, G. McC. "Ethnography and condition of south Africa before A.D. 1505" London 1919.
- Theal, G. McC. "History of South Africa from 1795-1872", 4 vol. London 1892, 1904, 1908, 1915.
- van Riet Lowe, C. "Prehistoric Art in South Africa" Dept. of Interior, Bureau of Archaeology, Archaeological Series No. V. Pretoria 1941.
- van Warmelo, N.J. "A preliminary Survey of the Bantu Tribes of South Africa", Pretoria 1935.

Willoughby, W.C. "Notes on the totemism of the Bacwana" Address & Papers of the Brit. S.A. Ass. for the Adv. Sci. vol.III 1905. p. 286.

Wookey, A.J. "Dingwalô leha e le dipolêlô ka ga ditšo tsa Setswana" (History of the Bechuana) Tigerkloof 1929.

D i s t r i c t:

174 Taung, Cape Province

T r i b e and t o t e m:

175 Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana, including section of Tlhaping boo Marumo, boo Moduana, boo Molehe or ba Phuduhudu. Totem: thôlô (Kudu). The tribe is No.32-01 in the Preliminary Survey of the Bantu tribes of S.A. by Dr. N.J. van Warmelo.

C h i e f:

176 KGOSIKEEHE SCOTCH MANKUROANE, born 1938, appointed as chief with civil and criminal jurisdiction on 10 August 1966.

L a n g u a g e:

177 Tlhaping dialect of seTswana which is the dialect of the Southern Tswana group of tribes.

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n:

178 The chief's area is the western part of the Taung Native Reserve with some adjoining trust farms in the north. The tribal land is defined as follows by the Bantu Authorities Proclamation No. 444 dated 29th March 1957: "From the beacon common to the Taung Native Reserve and the farms, Lowestoft (Vry.16.36) and Rockdale (Vry.16.35) on the boundary common to the Taung and Warrenton districts; thence in turn in a westerly, northerly, westerly and southerly direction along the said district boundary to the beacon common to the farms Witpan (Tau.F.1.9), Hartington and Lower Majeakgoro; thence along the boundary common to the farms Witpan (Tau.F.1.9) and Lower Majeakgoro, Thoming (Tau.1.15) and Lower Majeakgoro, Thoming (Tau.1.15) and Dingley Dell (CW.24.8), the Taung Native Reserve and Dingley Dell (CW.24.8); The Taung Native Reserve and Hoekplaats (B.A.W.23.15) to the beacon common to the Taung Native Reserve and the farms Hoekplaats (B.A.W.23.15) and Vaalbult (C.O.Tau.1.33); thence in a general northerly direction along the boundary common to the Taung and Vryburg districts to the beacon common to Portion C of Middelrand (Vry.8.34), Remainder of Middelrand (Vry.8.34), and Zamenkomst (Vry.8.47); thence along the boundary common to portion C of Middelrand (Vry.8.34) and remainder of Middelrand to the beacon common to Portion C of Middelrand (Vry.8.34), remainder of Middelrand (Vry.8.34) and Langerand (Vry.19.8) on the boundary common to the

Taung and Vryburg Districts; thence in a westerly and then in a general southerly direction along the boundary common to the Taung and Vryburg Districts and in turn in a general southerly and easterly direction along the boundary common to the Taung and Schweizer Reneke Districts to the beacon common to the farms Braklaagte No.151, Modimo (Tau.F.1.1) and Pendomer (Tau 1.1); thence along the boundary common to the farms Modimo (Tau.F.1.1) and Pendomer (Tau 1.1). The Taung Native Reserve and the farm Pendomer (Tau 1.1) to the point where the latter boundary intersects the centre line of the Harts River; thence downstream along the centre line of the Harts River to a point opposite a beacon on the southern bank of that River near the Kolong Hill; thence in a general southerly direction to the said beacon and along the line of beacons to the point of commencement."

179 The chief's headquarters are 3 miles from the Taung village. The chief's village is called Kolong, meaning the Harts River. The place names in seTswana are given in the map and the spelling of the place names is also given in par. 23. The tribal land is sub-divided into the areas of the individual official and inofficial headmen which are described in the chapters below on the individual headmen for their areas. For the average annual rainfall see par. 24 and Table No. I under par. 25. For the soils and vegetation see also the chapter on agriculture par. 122 ff.

180 The population census of 1951 and 1960 recorded figures for the areas of the headmen and for the total tribe which are given in Table VI, par. 101. These figures do not include absent workers. I estimate the total population of the tribe to be about 44,000.

M i g r a t i o n s and affinities of tribe:

181 About 1750 one of the earliest chiefs of the Tlhaping, Mašwe, lived at Nokaneng in the Langeberg, halfway between Kuruman and the confluence of the Nokana and Orange Rivers. It is also said that in their early history the tribe lived at "Dikgatlong". This means "confluence of rivers" and it cannot be said which Dikgatlong was their ancient home: the one mentioned at Nokaneng or that of the Vaal and Harts rivers which would be near Taung. Once the Korana Hottentots had the Tlhaping expelled from Taung. When the first Europeans came in 1811 they found the baTlhaping together with baRolong at Dithakong, which means the "ruins" in the southern part of the present district of Vryburg. A few years later the Rolong had

left. Later their country extended from here to the present Lower Kuruman Reserve and the Trust block to the east of it. After 1836 the tribe opened outposts for grazing in Taung and Schmidtsdrift. After the death of chief Mothibi, Mahura moved to Taung.

Skeleton genealogy of chiefs:

182

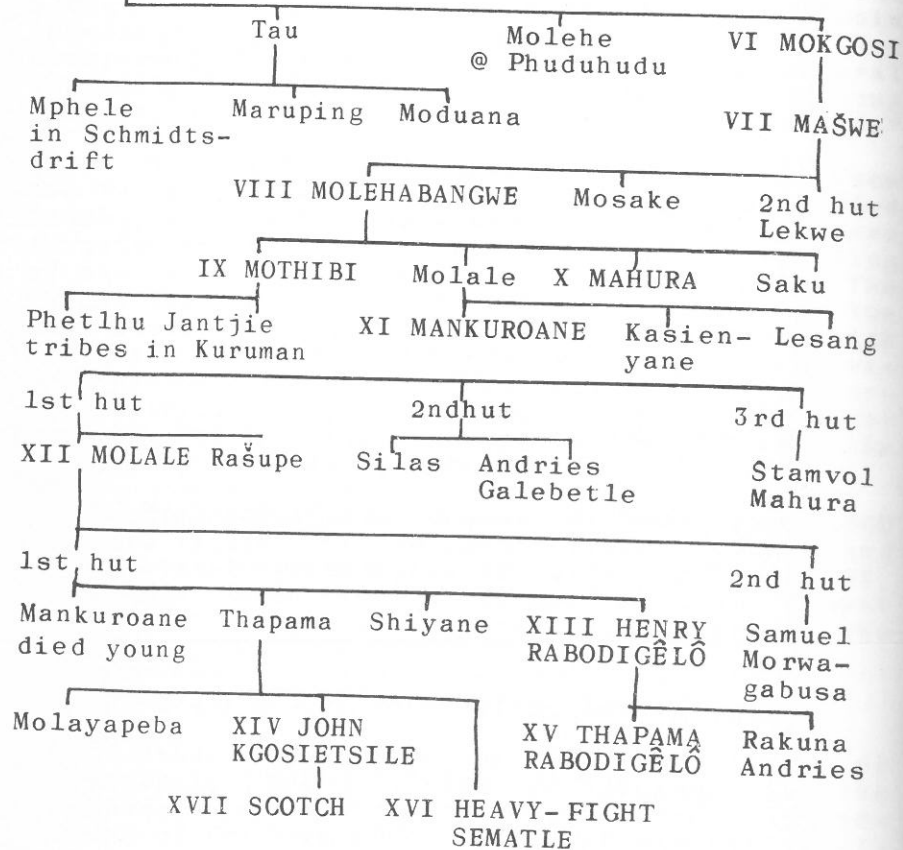
I imaginary chief Phuduhutšwana

II MILE

III MODUKANĒLO

IV MOLOKEDI

V MAMAE



History:

183 Down to the ninth chief MOTHIBI the Tlhaping history is described in the introductory part par. 64-90.

184 The Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana at Taung originated after the death of chief IX MOTHIBI in about 1838. While MOTHIBI was a son of the first hut of chief VIII MOLEHABANGWE, the sons of the second hut were Molale, MAHURA, Telekelo and Molema. Saku and Kgwasi were of the 4th hut and the daughter Marenyane was of the 5th hut. Molale and MAHURA were the forefathers of the Tlhaping section under discussion in Taung. Molale did not rule. He was born between 1790 and 1805 and died before his eldest brother, the chief MOTHIBI, after injuries caused by a lion on a hunt in the Kallahari in 1826.

185 Molale had the sons MANKUROANE, by his first wife and Kasienyane and Lesang by the second wife. Although the names of the wives are not known any more, MAHURA's wife was the younger sister to Molale's wife. Senior descendants of MAHURA claim today that MAHURA took over Molale's wife and adopted MANKUROANE when he was still a small boy. This can however not be proved as it would be customary in any case that MAHURA would have supported the widow and her children. X MAHURA acted for MANKUROANE and died in 1869. MAHURA had the following sons: in the 1st hut Bogosing, the grandfather of the present headman Brown Mahura, in the 2nd hut Mašwe and Lephoi whose descendants are the headmen of the Thakwaneng Reserve in Vryburg, (cf. "the Tribes of Vryburg district" Ethnol. Publications No. 46 par. 399) and in the 3rd hut Molema.

186 In 1836 Kaptain C.W. Harris met Mothibi and Mahura at an ancient stone kraal village near the sources of the Molopo River ("Wild Sports in S. Af." p.44). This was probably somewhere in the Molopo Reserve in Mafeking district and far away, from their home village. After having been a regent for over 40 years MAHURA is a well-known figure in Tlhaping history and some of his descendants have still an important status in the tribal administration. MAHURA and Saku originally lived with their brother and chief MOTHIBI at Dithakong (district Vryburg). MOTHIBI, however, was away at Philippolis, the capital of the Griqua under Adam Kok, for long periods and his brothers felt that he had let the tribe down in difficult times. There is also the fact that MOTHIBI had distributed his country among his sons and brothers before his death, which shows that the country had become too large to be controlled by one man.

Skeleton genealogy of chiefs:

182

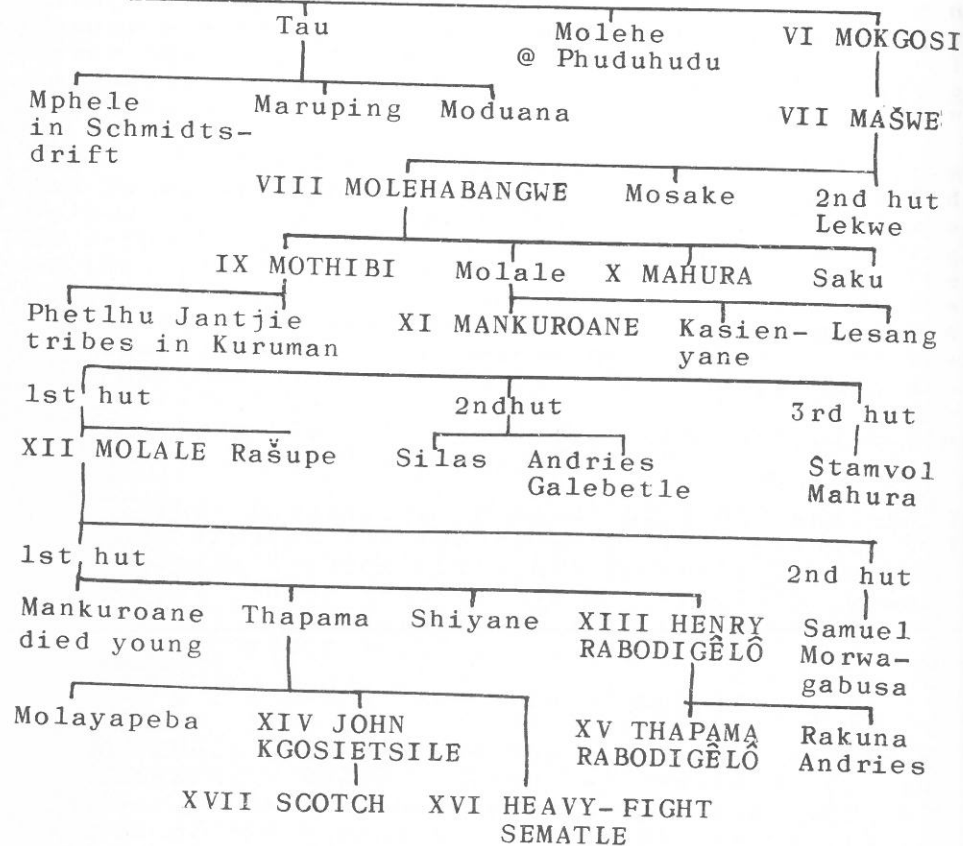
I imaginary chief Phuduhutšwana

II MILE

III MÔDUKANÊ LÔ

IV MOLOKEDI

V MAMAE



H i s t o r y:

183 Down to the ninth chief MOTHIBI the Tlha-
ping history is described in the introductory part
par. 64-90.

184 The Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana at Taung originated after the death of chief IX MOTHIBI in about 1838. While MOTHIBI was a son of the first hut of chief VIII MOLEHABANGWE, the sons of the second hut were Molale, MAHURA, Telekelo and Molema. Saku and Kgwasi were of the 4th hut and the daughter Marenyane was of the 5th hut. Molale and MAHURA were the forefathers of the Tlhaping section under discussion in Taung. Molale did not rule. He was born between 1790 and 1805 and died before his eldest brother, the chief MOTHIBI, after injuries caused by a lion on a hunt in the Kalahari in 1826.

185 Molale had the sons MANKUROANE, by his first wife and Kasienyane and Lesang by the second wife. Although the names of the wives are not known any more, MAHURA's wife was the younger sister to Molale's wife. Senior descendants of MAHURA claim today that MAHURA took over Molale's wife and adopted MANKUROANE when he was still a small boy. This can however not be proved as it would be customary in any case that MAHURA would have supported the widow and her children. X MAHURA acted for MANKUROANE and died in 1869. MAHURA had the following sons: in the 1st hut Bogosing, the grandfather of the present headman Brown Mahura, in the 2nd hut Mašwe and Lephoi whose descendants are the headmen of the Thakwaneng Reserve in Vryburg, (cf. "the Tribes of Vryburg district" Ethnol. Publications No. 46 par. 399) and in the 3rd hut Molema.

186 In 1836 Kaptain C.W. Harris met Mothibi and Mahura at an ancient stone kraal village near the sources of the Molopo River ("Wild Sports in S. Af." p.44). This was probably somewhere in the Molopo Reserve in Mafeking district and far away, from their home village. After having been a regent for over 40 years MAHURA is a well-known figure in Tlhaping history and some of his descendents have still an important status in the tribal administration. MAHURA and Saku originally lived with their brother and chief MOTHIBI at Dithakong (district Vryburg). MOTHIBI, however, was away at Philippolis, the capital of the Griqua under Adam Kok, for long periods and his brothers felt that he had let the tribe down in difficult times. There is also the fact that MOTHIBI had distributed his country among his sons and brothers before his death, which shows that the country had become too large to be controlled by one man.

MOTHIBI's eldest son died young, and also Molale had died before his father. Therefore MAHURA claimed the superiority over his and possibly over the other baPhuduhutswana sections. (cf. the subdivision of the baTlhaping in par. 81). MAHURA then moved from Dithakong to Taung and put his sister (probably of the 5th hut of MOLEHABANGWE), Marenthane, in charge of the small section of his own tribesmen which remained at Kuruman.

187 At the time when the Matebele were driven out of the Transvaal, there was a rivalry in the chief's house of the Ngwaketse between Sebege who lived at Lehututu at that time and Segotshane who was with his brother Bome. The Tlhaping who had horses and guns, joined the forces of Segotshane and attacked Sebege successfully near Moshaneng in 1842. But in the same year Segotshane was attacked by Gasebone who robbed most of his cattle. Segotshane then sought refuge at Taung where MAHURA allowed him to build the village of Mokgara.

188 As mentioned in par. 62, soon after Mahura had begun to rule, the Taaibosch section of the Korana Hottentots trekked up the Vaal river and settled at Mamusa (Schweizer Reneke) and other places. In 1846, Mahura had also lived at Mamusa with some of his followers, but the main body of the tribe had possibly stayed behind. Some informants say their place at Mamusa was Malelareng. About 1850 MAHURA moved back to Taung and later the Tlhaping and Korana became enemies, because as it is said the Korana stole some of their cattle in 1861. From then on the tensions between the two tribes grew until it led to a war later.

189 About 1857 Bushmen and people of chief Motlhabani and chief Gasebone plundered farms of the Boers while the men were away and engaged in a war against Moshweshwe in Basutoland. After returning from Basutoland the Boers pursued the stock thieves and some of them had taken refuge with MAHURA. This placed him in a difficult position because he wanted to live in peace with the Whites. MAHURA, however, refused to see that the stolen cattle was returned to the Boers. A battle ensued at Taung when the Boers, among them Adrian DelaRay, attacked the chief's headquarters. In this battle Saku who was the leader of the regiments, was killed. Mahura fled to another tribe in the west and his son of the second hut, Mašwe, made peace agreements with the Boers, handed over a large number of cattle, and ten of the murderers. T.T. Brown, "Among Bantu Nomads," p.211, mentions particulars about this agreements of which the figures may be exaggerated.

190 XI MANKUROANE, born about 1825 assumed duty as a chief in 1869. He had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Kelemekae, great wife and member of the tribe
 - a MOLALE m (chief XII)
 - b Mmagaejangwe f
 - c Rašope m (cf. headman at Thamasikwa)
 - d Mmamorwa f
- 2 Mmakgolo, a member of the tribe at Taung
 - a Lešóbo m, the father of Stoffel who died
 - b Ramagabane m who had no son
 - c Mahura Stamvol m, died 1909, he is the grandfather of headman Stanley Mahura of Modimong
 - d Kekeng f
- 3 Mmamatlhe, a member of the tribe from Taung
 - a Silas m, died in 1923, he is the father of the headman at Mokassa
 - b Galebetlwe Andries m, died in 1932, his son August was also headman at Mokassa
- 4 Madi had no children.

MANKUROANE ruled until his death in 1891.

191 In 1878 a rebellion of the Griqua and mixed groups of Korana started at Griqua town. This rebellion also affected the Tlhaping at Dithakong, Manyeding (east of Kuruman) and Qoo in the present Taung Reserve where Luka, the son of Jantjie led the regiments, which were beaten by the British.

192 In 1881/2 the cattle raids by the Korana in Mamusa under their chief David "Massouw" led to a war with the baTlhaping and later in 1884 with the Transvaal Republic. When MANKUROANE became chief and the meeting of the chiefs at Bloemhof took place, the father of David Mosweu, Ryt Taaibosch Mosweu, was still living and about 100 years old. The territory of the Korana was acknowledged by the Transvaal Republic in 1872. Mosweu is the more correct spelling of the chief's name "Massouw".

In 1881 MANKUROANE prepared for this was, which was fought with the assistance of European soldiers, and which led to the establishment of the Republic of Stellaland. For the description of this war and the origin of Stellaland see par. 38-44.

193 The Korana lost their land after another war with the Boers, which started after the refusal by the Hottentots to pay tax to the Transvaal Government. As mentioned before, the Tlhaping of Taung had occasional difficulties with the Transvaal Republic (cf. par. 41) and therefore MANKUROANE sought the assistance of the British, and placed himself under British protection and the rule of the British Bechuanaland after the intervention by Sir Charles Warren ("Radigelas") in 1884. From then on there was a strong British influence through the agent Daumas and others which was also exercised at the same time at Mafeking, while the tribes in the Transvaal acknowledged the Transvaal Republic.

194 XII MOLALE succeeded his father in 1892. He was born at Taung in 1855, his regiment was Majatau, and he died on 16.4.1920. MOLALE had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Victoria or "Setoria", a member of the tribe of Taung
 - a Makuroane m, who died unmarried
 - b Thapama m, died in 1901
 - c HENRY RABODIGÊLO m (acting chief XIII)
 - d Shiyane m, died unmarried
 - e Raseêtsele m, had a son who died
- 2 Tshano from Magopêla
 - a Senêwang f
 - b Morwagabusa Samuel m born 1895, died 1962 when he should become regent.
- 3 Gaainame, a member of the tribe at Taung
 - a Bontlhogetse m, born 1902, died 1935, he had no issue
 - b } names are not m
 - c } remembered m

Further historical events, such as the annexation of British Bechuanaland to the Cape Colony and the Langeberg Rebellion which took place in connection with measures against the Rinderpest epidemic in 1896, are also described in par. 44-46.

195 Thapama did not become chief because he died long before his father, MOLALE, in 1901. He had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Keipheleng
 - a Molayapeba m died young
 - b Gorileng f died
 - 2 Matlhopo
 - a KGOSIETSILE JOHN m born 1906 (chief XIV)
 - b Bakaileng f died
 - c Gaokgorwe f
 - 3 Seipone was probably not yet married with bogadi. After Thapama's death in 1901 she was married by Silasile Ramolale, the son of Lesang of MANKUROANE'S brother of the second hut,
 - a Shôlô m died
 - b HEAVYFIGHT SEMATLE m (regent XVI) born 1908
 - c Mankhane f
- 196 XIV JOHN KGOSIETSILE, born in 1906, was still too young to succeed his grandfather MOLALE. Therefore XIII HENRY RABODIGÊLO, became regent on behalf of JOHN. HENRY is a son of MOLALE and brother of Thapama (cf. par. 194) and was born in 1869. He had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Tlapaneng, a member of the tribe
 - a Ehentse m died
 - b Thwesi f died
 - c THAPAMA RABODIGÊLO m (regent XV)
 - d Sebotseng f
 - e Keleleng f
 - f Khoane m, headman at Matlapaneng

- 2 Seapei, a member of the tribe
- a Kealeboga f
 - b Rakuna Andries m, died and was headman after Khoane
 - c Stamp m, living in Klerksdorp
- 3 Tsêtsêemang
- a Luis m, living in Taung
- 4 Kelemisang, sister of chief Phoi at Madibogo (my informant) one child died in infancy.

HENRY ruled until his death on 10.6.1934.

197 In 1934, XIV JOHN KGOSIETSILE MANKUROANE succeeded as chief. He had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Ojwaemang, of the kgôrô Modumo at Matlhapaneng
 - a Mankuroane m, died
 - b Kearabetse f
 - c SCOTCH KGOSIKEEHE m (chief XVII)
 - d Moendia Ernest m died
- 2 Aitsiwimang, came from another tribe
 - a Boitumelo m
 - b Storia f.

JOHN died on 30.11.1948.

198 XV THAPAMA RABODIGÊLÔ succeeded as regent on 23.12.1948. He was born in the same year as his predecessor, i.e. in 1906, and his regiment was Maakapula. He was the son of the regent XIII HENRY RABODIGÊLÔ (cf. par. 196). THAPAMA had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Mmabathobatho from Kolong
 - a Gorileng f
 - b Tlhapisebele Benjamin m, born 1930
 - c Kelaegile f
 - d Martins m, died

- e Nthai m, died
- 2 Angelina Onewang, from Marubiseng
 - a Madikgwa f
 - b Setsêgô f
 - c Partors m } twins, living
 - d du Plessis m }

In the time of THAPAMA's regency the tribe accepted the Bantu Authorities Act and created a tribal Authority with an improved management of the tribal affairs. THAPAMA died on 31.5.1962.

199 XVI HEAVYFIGHT SEMATLE MOLALE, born in 1908, was appointed acting chief on 12.10.1962. He has only one wife and the following issue:

1 Evelyn Kgakgamatšo, from Morokweng in Vryburg. married in 1945

- a Sipone f
- b Sebolaneng m
- c Mabatlhaping f
- d Baby f.

Heavyfight was a compound induna at the Stilfontein mine and tribal representative in Klerksdorp. In 1966 he handed over the chieftainship to the heir XVII SCOTCH MANKUROANE, born in 1939, regiment Manesapula, SCOTCH married Leonara Tshwaro Gaope who has the daughters Gometemo Lindagrace and Oit-sile Benedictor by a previous husband.

9 R e g i m e n t s

200 The initiation ceremonies for the boys (bogwêra) and for the girls (bojale) are still held under the chief of the tribe. According to the usage of this tribe, occasionally the members who underwent the ceremonies in different years form one regiment (mophato) together. This is also the reason for several years' intervals between some regiments.

201 The following regiments formed during the history of this tribe are remembered:

Regiment	Leader	Year
Lohaha lo lontšwe	Kgosi Kaing ?	
Lohaha lo lošweuyana	Molale XII	c.1877
Majaapô (probably incorporated under the next regiment)		
Maganêla	Rašope	
Masitakgosi	Mahura Stamvol	
Majaatau	Molale	
Matlotlakgosi	Lešobo	
Mahenyakgosi	Mosimanephela Kasienyane, later Thapama i.e. Paratlhatle war	c.1880/5
Maletakgosi	HENRY RABODIGÊLÔ	c.1890
Maakakgosi	Stoffel Mankuroane son of Lešobo	1904
Maakathata	Ehentse, after his death Samuel took over	1918
Maakapula	Thapama	1925
a bogwêra held in 1939 first fall under the regiment Maakapula, but was transferred later to the next regiment Maakakgang.		
Maakakgang	Khoale, son of Henry	1940
Maakakantwa	Seile Kasienyane	1942
this regiment was later incorporated in Maakakgang		
Mashiêla	Nku Kasienyane brother of Seile	1944
Malatêlakgosi	Benjamin Thakwama son of Heavyfight	1950
Manesapula	Scotch Mankuroane	1957.
A bogwêra held in 1965 was incorporated in the regiment Maakapula.		
A bogwêra held in 1966 is not yet named.		

10 Political organisation

202 Originally all Tswana tribes were composed of various dikgôrô or clans. Such sections of the tribes were however destroyed by wars and by changing the tribal headquarters in the course of the history of nearly all southern Tswana tribes. The dikgôrô in southern Tswana, also called "kgotla", of this tribe are still remembered, but do not function politically any more. The clans are as follows:

Clan	sub-clan	head of the clan
I Bakgosing	1 Mankuroane	the chief
	2 Mahura	Brown Mahura, official headman
	3 Saku	Kobane Saku, official headman
	4 Lesakga	Toi
	5 Madito	Tšhukuduyane
	6 Motlholane	Tikang
II boo Marumo		Mohatlha Tokwe at Motlhabeng
	1 ba ga Mokalake	
	2 ba ga Lekwene	
	3 ba ga Gabagopolwe	
III ba ga Molehe or Phuduhudu		
	1 ba ga o Thue	(independent tribe at Dithakong, Vryburg)
	2 ba ga o Thipa	Stanley Ntokwe, official headman
IV baRolong	1 ba ga Mokgôpa	George Mončwe
	2 ba ga Sehuba	
V baHurutshe, baTlharo, and baTshweneng no headman		
VI baKgatla	1 ba ga Kgafêla	no headman
	2 ba ga Manaana	

203 The sections of the Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana at Taung under chief Mankuroane are subdivided according to areas of the officially appointed Government headmen. Particulars about every headman are given below after the description of the tribe in general and in the same sequence, as given here:

Place or area	official headman
1) Taung Village	Tshipo Stanley Kasienyane, head councillor
2) Molale and Bogosing irrigation plots	Joseph Baisitse
3) Matlhapaneng	Rašope Singleboy Mankuroane
4) Mokassa I & II, Motšweding	Thatayatsile Smash Mankuroane
5) Modimong Lcn./Marubiseng and Pudumoe	Stanley Mahura Mankuroane
6) Magopela	Brown Lekula Kgosi-buang Mahura
7) Dry Harts:Kgobadi, Roodepoort, Vyeboom-vlakte	Jerry Mahura
8) Magogong, Modutung, Maphoitsile	Kobane Kingsley Saku
9) Old Taung or Smous = Marope-a-tau Matolong or "Moss" and Rooival	Botlhasitse Stanley Smous
10) Banksdrift and Witpan	Frank Molema Maba-tsane
11) Vaaltyn Location	Piet Olehile Seoloseng
12) Thamasikwa or Buxton	Thêio John Ganoke
13) Mokgareng	Kebalepile Stanley Ntokwe.

204 Most of the official Government headmen are relatives of the chief's house. It is the Tswana custom to appoint chief's relatives for the supervision of tribal outposts. Furthermore the chief appointed sub-headmen or "matona", some of these are directly subject to the chief while

others are subject to official headmen. In a way they have the function of former clan-headmen. These headmen and their areas are as follows:

place or area	sub-headman	subject to official headman
1) Kolong	Piet Phatlhanyane	to the chief
2) Mathanthabe	G. Gaonnwe	Baitsitse
5) Motlhabeng= =Mašwe-stat	R.Thekiso= Jackson Gaserotse	Rašope
4) Choseng	G.Ntikang	Rašope
5) Mokgareng I	de-Beer Mankuroane	Rašope
6) Loselong	Stanley Mokolonkwane	Rašope
7) Mokassa II	Brophy Molale	Smash T.Mankuroane
8) Lokgabeng	White=Mošweu	Smash Mankuroane
9) Modimong	Barakanye	St.M.Mankuroane
10) Kgathumane	G.Moretlwe died, vacancy	St. M. Mankuroane
11) Mohoole	Wilson Rratampae Gonntshe	Stanley Mangwegape
12) Hospital area =Location No.1	Leeuw Rakwena	Stanley Mangwegape
13) Makgwe-stat	Selekanyo Ntikang	Stanley Mangwegape
14) Mmatlhako	Frans Mothibedi	Brown Mahura
15) Pudumoe	Martins Lešowe	Brown Mahura
16) Maganeng	Nieman Mahura	Jerry Mahura
17) Magogong	Motosi Kake	Kobane Saku
18) Modutung	William Botlhasitse	Kobane Saku
19) Dikhuting	Flennie Gaobusi	Kobane Saku

Place or area	sub-headman	subject to official headman.
20) Motolong	Cariot Sebinda (Xhosa)	B.St.Smous
21) Močweding	Clement Tlabeng Daumas	Mabatsane
22) Bayer's Halt	Orekeng Booi	John Ganoke

205 Before the Tribal Authority was established the chief's council consisted of 16 advisers, some of which were chief's relatives, eight were official headmen and the others sub-headmen and elected traditional councillors.

206 The Phuduhutšwana Tribal Authority was proclaimed by Government Notice No. 444 of 29.3.1957 and the number of tribal councillors was fixed from 21 to 27. At first 21 tribal councillors were nominated, but they did not represent all sections of the tribe. Therefore a new council was composed towards the end of 1963, comprising 27 members. They are:

Area	Councillor
--	1) W.L.Mogorosi, "chief's Deputy" for the tribal and regional authorities
--	2) headm. Fshipo Stanley Mangwagape, head councillor = "Ntona"
Taung Stat	3) Johannes Puoethata Mangwagape, elected councillor
	4) Piet Patlanyane, sub-headman, elected councillor
Manokwane	5) Headman Joseph L. Baisitse
Matlapaneng	6) Headman Rašope Sing-leboy Mankuroane
	7) vacant post, will probably be filled by Jackson Mogotu or Jood Hanse

Area	Councillor
Mokasa	8) Headman Smash T. Mankuroane
	9) vacant post
Modimong	10) Headman Stanley Mahura Mankuroane
	11) vacant post
Magopêla	12) Headman Brown L.Kg. Mahura
	13) Godfrey Gaborone
Dry Harts	14) Headman Jeffrey Mahura
	15) Lukas Baepi
Magogong	16) Paul Matsieta, elected member representing headman K.K. Saku
	17) David Kgosing, do.
Old Taung	18) vacant for a deputy of Headman B.Stanley Smous
Tlapeng/Banksdrift	19) Clemens Daumas, sub-headman of Močweding and deputy for Headman F.M. Mabatsane
Thamasikwa/Buxton	20) Headman Thêiô John Ganoke
	21) Lorenz Ndimbazana, a Xhosa, elected councillor
Mokgareng	22) Headman Stanley Kebalepile Ntokwe
	23) Looseboy Sisi, elected councillor
Vaaltyn	24) Headman Piet O. Seolotseng
additional members	25) Freddie Monnamorwa, elected councillor
	26) Lucas Jebetle, elected councillor

Area

Councillor

-

27) M. Makgothi, elected councillor.

207 The Regional Authority of the district of Taung consists of 17 members representing the tribes and the Locations (cf. par. 20) of which 8 councillors represent the tribe under discussion. Five members of the Regional Authority represent the Region on the Territorial Authority (par. 21).

Sources

208 I visited the tribe at Taung several times in January and March 1960, in 1963, 1965 and May 1966. The material was obtained from Chief Heavyfight Molale, his relatives, headmen, councillors and old people.

209 All other matters of general interest, such as social customs, beliefs, churches, schools, material culture, agriculture, health etc. are dealt with in the chapters of the general introduction.

HEADMEN AT THE CHIEF'S PLACE IN TAUNG.

210 The chief of the Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana at Taung has a Government appointed headman for the management of local affairs at Taung stat. His functions are similar to those of a chief's head councillor (TONA KGOLO). It appears that the Government has recognised such a headman since 1910, although no exact date could be found in the available sources.

211 The first headman known of this area was (A) P. KALAMONE who died in 1917. He was succeeded by (B) PIET MAJABE who was appointed by the Government on 1st January 1918. His services were terminated because of old age on 1st June 1931. The next headman was (C) GEORGE MOLATLHWA, appointed on 1st June 1931. He married Alice Molatlhwa and lived in Magopêla. Chief Mankuroane complained about his work and the headman was temporarily deposed. He was reappointed on 5th December 1940 on condition that he would live at Taung and obey the chief's orders. He died on 17th October 1941. The first three headmen were not related to the chief's house.

212 From now on the chief at Taung recommended that a member of the chief's family should become headman and the Government accordingly appointed a grandson of Chief MOLALE and son of Kasienyane namely (D) JIM TLHAPAETSILE MOLALE on the 1st October 1941. He was born in or before 1896, his regiment being Maakathata. JIM TLHAPAETSILE MOLALE had the following wives and issue:

1 Mohulenyane Sophie

- a Mohutsiwa f
- b SEILE m the present headman
- c Maijakane f
- d Kelebogile f
- e Boareng m

2 Bontleeng, a moTlhaping who subsequently deserted her husband

- a Pasele (Parcel) m
- b name unknown f

3 Makoteng

died at early age without issue

4 Mabebe

a Oarabile m born about 1950

b Onewang f.

The headman died on 9th September 1955. His eldest son did not succeed immediately as he preferred to continue in private employment.

213 (E) JOHANNES MANGWEGAPE was appointed on 1st November 1955, in an acting capacity for the present headman. He was elected by the people and is not related to the chief's house. He married Siadimo Dorothea and had the sons Stanley, Frans and Robert.

214 (F) SEILE STANLEY KASIENYANE was appointed to the headmanship on 1.11.1955. He was born in 1923, and his regiment is Maabantwa (1941). He has no formal education. He married Oshupeng Edith and has the following children by her:

a Ontihetse m, died in youth

b f, died unnamed

c Ohitlhetssemang f

d Buši f

e Lesang m born 1959.

The headman had no personal advisers. He is a senior headman of the tribe and one of the chief's principal councillors. He resigned on 1 January 1962.

215 The present headman Stanley Tshipo Mangwe - gape son of Johannes was born in 1905, married Gaonewe Emily, and has three children. He was appointed on 2.4.1962.

216 Another new post for a headman was created in 1962. Before a sub-headman was in charge of the inhabitants of certain irrigation scheme plots. The area of the new headman comprises the irrigation plots of Molale and Bogosing and the grazing, land of Mokake, Manokwane, Mathanthabe and Kolong.

217 The first officially appointed headman for this area is Lekgêthô Joseph Baisitse who is not

related to the chief's house and was appointed on 2.4.1962. L. Joseph Baisitse is a commoner of the Tlhaping tribe and son of Baisitse. His wife Mmagasesujwe. He still has a brother Wilson Gasegalale. Joseph was born in 1898, his regiment is Maakathata (1918). He has elementary school education and is a member of the Roman Catholic Church. He married

1 Katiki Kolebile, who has the following issue:

a Abel Moseikeseimang m born 1920

b Israel Ntwampe m born 1925

c Kelatilwe f died

d Mosihapula m born 1930

2 Mmapêfe Susanna, married after death of Kolebile in 1935

a Ntwaitsile m, died

3 Elizabeth Baisi,

no children.

D i s t r i c t:

218 Taung, Cape Province.

219 baTlhaping ba Phuduhutswana including a section of baTlhaping boo Marumo. Totem: thôlô (Koodoo). The headman's people are part of the tribes No. 32-01 and 32-04 as mentioned in the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu tribes of S.A." by Dr. N.J. van Warmelo. New No. 32-01.2.

Present H e a d m a n:

220 Headman Rašupe Single Rašupe Mankuroane, born in 1925. The headman has no jurisdiction and is subordinate to the chief at Taung. He was appointed as headman by the Government on 1st February 1962. Residence: Matlapaneng.

L a n g u a g e:

221 Tlhaping dialect of Setswana.

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n:

222 The headman's area adjoins the railway line near Pudumoe Station and the block of Trust farms to the North of his area, to the West his area is bounded by the district boundary, to the east by the road and railway line, and in the south the boundary between the headman and his neighbour, S. Ntokwe, is part of the Maditung spruit which runs from the south-west into the Mokgareng Dam, the Magopêla spruit east of the Dry Hartz and further west the Nkabang spruit. The holders of the irrigation plots of Pudumoe are under supervision of a sub-headman Sebegile Mothibedi who is subordinate to headman Rašupe. Matlapaneng is 14 miles from Taung by road. The area is unsurveyed and forms a triangle of about 10 by 14 miles, situated in the North-western part of the district.

223 There are the following villages in the headman's area:

Matlapaneng (his residence)

Kgantsang on the western boundary of the district where the road enters the neighbouring farm Klipplaats.

Loselong on the road from Pudumoe to the west where it enters the farm Dwaalvlakte

Rapopinyane about 2 miles east of Loselong

Sedibeng 2-3 miles east of the latter

Tsoseng 2-3 miles further east where the Matlhako or Pudumong spruit joins the Dry Harts River

Motlhaneng, formerly also called Mokgareng II (on old maps Mokgareng III) by the inhabitants about 3 miles west of the Dry Harts (Mogara) Dam.

The system of spruits is not yet surveyed. There are the Nkabang running west, the Maditung running east into the Mokgareng near the Dry Harts Dam, and the Matlhako or Pudumong spruit running from east to west into the Dry Harts River, both forming part of the boundary of the headman's area. The average annual rainfall is 17 inches.

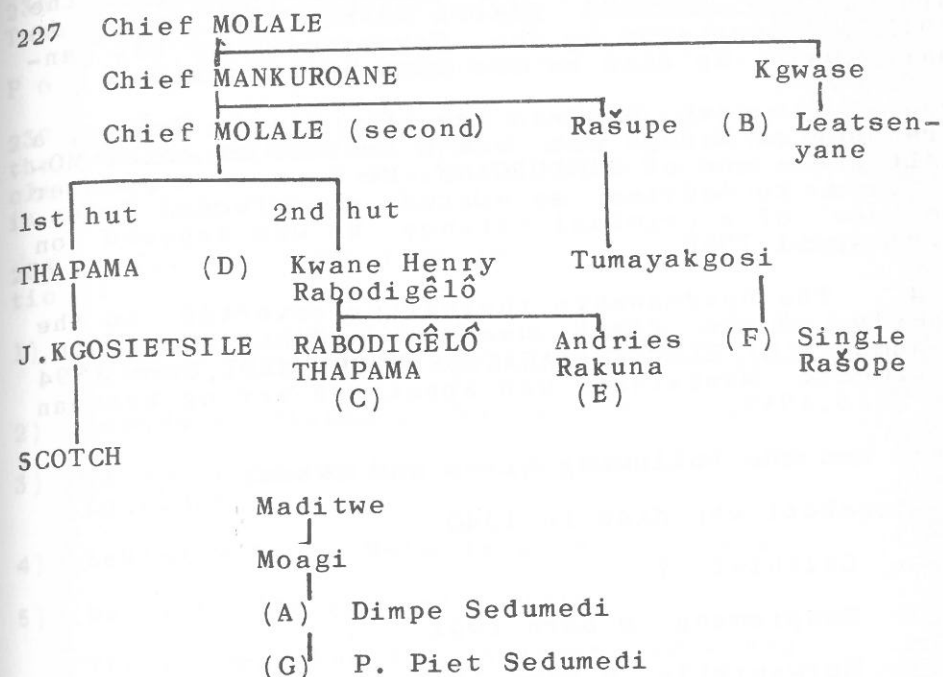
224 The census of 1951 recorded a population of 2216 (972 m, 1244 f.). In 1958, 330 taxpayers were registered under the headman, the number of which is too low compared with the Census, which was taken during the harvest time when many people were away working on farms. I estimate the present population (1960), including absent workers, at 4,000 to 4,500.

M i g r a t i o n s and affinities of tribe

225 No important migrations have taken place. It appears that early in the last century the tribe lived at Dithakong in the South of Vryburg district.

226 The main section, although not senior, of the baTlhaping boo Marumo lives at Bothithong in Vryburg district under headman Pakwe Sengae. Others reside at Thamasikwa (or Buxton Location) under headman S.M. Ganoke.

Skeleton genealogy of chiefs:



H i s t o r y and genealogies of chiefs:

228 The Matlapaneng area has a mixed population of baTlhaping boo Marumo and baTlhaping ba Phuduhutswana. The headmen of this area have always belonged to the baTlhaping ba Phuduhutswana section. Concerning the boo Marumo see paras. 72-74 and the book "Tribes of Vryburg district" (Ethnological publication No. 46 par.444). In the olden days the area was used for grazing purposes only.

229 The first Headman of Matlapaneng was (A) DIMPE SEDUMEDI, son of Moagi and grandson of Maditwe of the Dibere section of the chief's (Molale) clan. He became headman some years before 1894 and was headman until his death in 1920, being very old at that time.

230 The next headman was (B) Leatsenyane, a son of Kgwase (died 1914) who was a half-brother to chief MANKUROANE. This headman ruled from 1920 until he died in 1934.

231 (C) The acting chief Robodigêlô Thapama was headman for the Matlapaneng area from 1934-1948. When he became regent he handed the headmanship over to (D) Kwane Rabodigêlô, his brother of the same hut, born c.1915, who ruled until he died in 1951.

232 He was succeeded by his half-brother of the 3rd hut (E) ANDRIES RAKUNA MANKUROANE, born in 1917 and appointed by the Government on 1st January 1952. He died on the 16th August 1958.

233 The next headman was (F) Single Rašupe, a grandson of Rasupe who was a brother of chief MO-LALE and a son of MANKUROANE. He is not a younger brother to Andries as stated in official files. Because of a criminal offence he was deposed on 27th April 1959.

234 The headmanship thereafter reverted to the family of the first headman and his grandson, headman (G) PIET THATAEAKGOSIE SEDUMEDI, born 1894 regiment: Maakathata was appointed acting headman on 28.4.1959.

PIET had the following wives and issue:

1 Masekoti who died in 1940

a Calehiwi f

b Moepiemang m born 1921

c Morwaotsile m born 1923

d Mosha m

2 Mosipo, married after the death of 1),

a Segomotse f.

Piet died on 12 August 1962. He was a maternal uncle to the present headman.

235 Headman (F) Rašupe Single Rašupe was reappointed as official headman on 1st February 1963. He married Sapelo Rebecca according to Christian rites and has the following children:

a Boingôtlo f born 1951

b Keamoitse f

c Gaesi m

d Gagoresepe m

e Ketšhwanetse f born 1963.

Regiments:

236 See under Regiments of the parent tribe at Taung, par. 201.

Political organisation

237 The clan system does not play any part in the administration of this tribal section and the clans which are parts of the tribal clans residing in the headman's area no longer have clan heads.

238 The tribe is composed of the following sections:

1) Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana, baKgosing ya ga Molale

2) Hurutshe, living at Matlapaneng

3) Tlhaping boo Marumo, at Matlapaneng and at Loselong

4) baKgatla ba ga Manaana at Matlapaneng

5) ba ga Matlholwana at Tsoseng

The headman has the following advisers:

1) Tšotše Rramatlhware supervising a subarea of Matlapaneng

2) Kgaotsang Kgaotsang for the southern part of Matlapaneng

3) Kokwe Gaseonale for the northern part of Matlapaneng

4) Bos Malete at Mokgareng

5) Selogilwe Mokgarongkwane for Loselong

6) Rraataeng Thêkiso at Mokgareng.

The fact that the headman has advisers shows that he discusses matters relating to his area at his own place. Headmen who have no adviser call public meetings only and are usually fully dependent on their chiefs.

239 I visited the tribe in January 1960 and obtained the material from the headman and some of his councillors.

D i s t r i c t:

240 Taung, C.P.

T r i b e and totem:

241 Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana, totem: thôlô (Kudu). The Survey Number of the tribe is No. 32-01.3.

Present headman:

242 THATAETSILE SMASH MANKUROANE, born in 1905, regiment: Maakapula. He was appointed as headman by the Government on 1st April 1952, being subordinate to the Chief at Taung and having no civil or criminal jurisdiction.

Residence: Mokassa, Location No. 21.

L a n g u a g e:

243 Tlhaping dialect of seTswana.

L a n d and strength of P o p u l a t i o n:

244 The area of this section of the tribe is Mokassa I, Mokassa II and Motšweding. Motšweding is in the Released Area between the Vaal Harts Irrigation Scheme land and the Crown land farm Thoming. At Motšweding is an unrecognised sub-headmen, Clement Daumas. Mokassa I is in the Released Area, north and south of Norlim while Mokassa II is in the Taung Irrigation Scheme area south of the Railway line from Taung to Thoming. In the northern part, the headman's area extends slightly to the west of this railway line. Location No. 21 is unsurveyed and no exact boundaries can be given. There is a small newly founded village, near Mokassa I, called Itireleng. The headman's residence is about 6 miles from the Magistrates office. The average annual rainfall is approximately 17 inches.

245 For the Population Census of 1951, the headman's area was not enumerated separately but was grouped with the neighbouring area of Vaaltyn. For the joint area 3 665 people were recorded (1 608 males and 2 065 females). The number of taxpayers registered under this headman was 911 (in 1957) which appears to be high. The proportion of taxpayers between this headman and the headman at Vaaltyn is 9 to 1. If this is applied to the Census Population figures the proportion would be about 3 300 to 372. For 1960, I estimate the total population, absent workers included, at 5 500 to 6 500.

M i g r a t i o n s and affinities of tribe:

246 The migrations and affinities of the tribal section is the same as of the main tribe paragraph 181.

Skeleton genealogy of chiefs:

247 VIII MOLEHABANGWE

MOTHIBI X MOLALE IX MAHURA

XI MANKUROANE

Lesang Kasienyane Molale

(A) Ramolale Kasienyane

1st hut

2nd hut

3rd hut

XII MOLALE (B) Silas (C) Andries Lesobo Ramaga-Stam-
Rasupe Galebethewe bane vol
(E) Smash (D) August Mahura
Thataetsile

H i s t o r y:

248 The first headman of Mokassa II was (A) RAMOLALE KASIENYANE, a son of Kasienyane. It is not known when he was born or when he assumed the headmanship. He died in 1901.

249 The next headman was (B) SILIAS MANKUROANE (from 1901 on) who lived at Mokassa.I. SILIAS was born after 1850, his regiment being Mahenyakgosi, and died on the 17th June 1923. He had the following wives and issue:

1 Keipheleng

- a Gaenamelemo m died
- b Thebeeole m died
- c Mahulenyane f died
- d Polo f died
- e Gaothusi m died
- f Wetsoemang f died
- g Mamai m died

2 Kebitsang

- a Thataetsile Smash m present headman
- b Thatanyane m
- c Makoteng f died
- d Rekêla f.

250 He was succeeded by his brother (C) ANDRIES GALEBETHWE MANKUROANE, born 1859/60 and appointed by the government as headman on 18th June 1923. He died on 19th July 1932.

251 ANDRIES was succeeded by his eldest son (D) AUGUST MANKUROANE, born in 1885. He married Mmamakgobe Letti. AUGUST was pensioned on the 31st March 1952 and died on the 28.1.1961.

252 The present headman is (E) THATAETSILE SMASH MANKUROANE, who is a son of SILAS. Also cf. par. 242. He married Letara Lettie, who was first married by a brother of the first hut. However Smash gave bogadi for the wife and consequently all the children are his children. They are:

- a Keipeleng f
- b Sebatlwang f died
- c Sedigwang f died
- d m died in youth
- e Adam m born 1937
- f Matsiê f
- g Kgosithêbê m
- h Kgositlolo m
- i Mankuroane m
- j Mankiki f.

R e g i m e n t s

253 For regiments see the parent tribe, par. 201.

P o l i t i c a l s y s t e m:

254 The followers of the headman belong mainly to the Mankuroane clan of the tribe.

255 The headman has three advisers to assist him:

- 1) Isaak Khuduga, 2) Thekiswaane Kenalemang,
- 3) Khanene Mosimanyane.

256 I visited the tribe in January 1960 and obtained the above material from the headman and his advisers.

D i s t r i c t:

257 Taung, Cape Province.

T r i b e:

258 Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana, totem: tholo (Kudu). The survey number of the tribe is No. 32-01.4.

Present H e a d m a n:

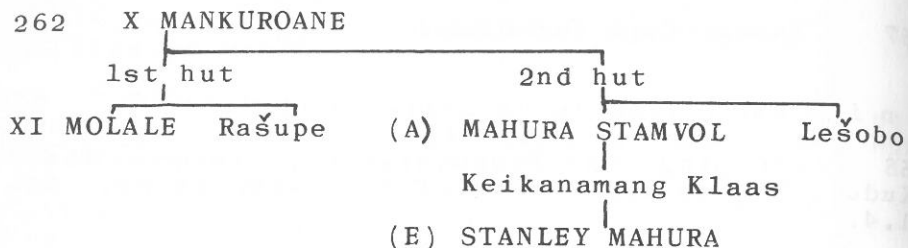
259 STANLEY MAHURA MANKUROANE, born 1911, regiment Maakakgang. He was appointed as headman by the Government on 1st April 1952, being subordinate to chief MANKUROANE. Residence: Marubiseng in the Modimong Location No. 26.

L a n d and strength of P o p u l a t i o n:

260 The headman's area is situated in the northern part of the district and comprises the following farms and villages: Zwartkoppies 173 with the villages Myra in the south-east and Malapitse in the west of the farm; Klein Pudimong; the village of Mogopela; the farms Highlands and Modimong with the village Modimong South of the farm on the Modimong spruit; a village, Gamakwere situated west of Modimong and the Setlhabeng grazing area which is partly claimed by the ba ga Maidi tribe. The south-eastern boundary of the headman's area runs down the Harts River to where it reaches the hill Shwedintle and from there to the point where the Sekantsane spruit reaches the irrigation canal. The headman's residence, Marubiseng is 6 miles north of the magistrate's office between the spruits Sekantsane and Tsokonyane. The area is unsurveyed and its extent cannot be given. The place Kgatumanje also belongs to the headman's area.

261 The Census of 1951 drew no clear line between Headmen S.M. Mankuroane and S. Mahura. According to the sub-enumerator boundaries half of the population counted under headman Mahura belongs to S.M. Mankuroane. It is probable, however, that the people were enumerated according to headmen and regardless of sub-district enumerator boundaries. In the headman's Census sub-district a population of 3507 (1621 males, 1886 females) was recorded. Possibly 500 from the adjoining sub-enumerator's area must be added. In 1957, 916 taxpayers were registered under the headman of Marubiseng. I estimate the present population of the headman roughly at 4700 plus 2300 absent workers, i.e. a total of 7000

Skeleton genealogy of chiefs:



History

263 The first headman for the Modimong and Marubiseng area was (A) STAMVOL MAHURA MANKUROANE, son of the second hut of chief MANKUROANE and born between 1850 and 1860. His regiment was Madisakgomo and he died in 1909.

264 The second headman, from 1909 to 30 September 1913, was (B) Kong Mahura. (The name Kan appears to have been misspelt in the departmental files and my informants did not know a man of this name). He lived at Pudumoe. According to departmental files again Kong Mahura applied for a resignation because he wanted to go away for a long period. The Magistrate thereupon recommended KANONO MASITO as his successor (dated 7th October 1913).

265 On 1st October 1913, the third headman (C) KANONO MASITO, a Tlhaping, was appointed by the Government. He was not related to the chief's house, and appears to have been merely chosen by the Department. He died on 26th June 1931.

266 The next headman, appointed by the Government on 1st December 1931 was (D) THUKUDE SERURUBELE, a Mangwato, who was not even a member of the tribe. He was born in 1866, and was a herdboys in the Latela war. He was pensioned because of old age on 1st April 1952.

267 With the appointment of the headman (E) STANLEY MAHURA MANKUROANE, a chief's relative again took over. For particulars about him also cf. par. 259. He married Mogoditsane Bellina and has the following children by her:

- a Keikanameng Klaas m born 13th January 1939
- b Makholo Georgina f
- c Silas Oneboy m.

The headman died on 2.2.1966 and his son Klaas succeeded on 1.9.1966.

political organisation:

268 The tribal clans live scattered over the headman's area. There are also some baHurutshe and baKgatla in the area.

269 The headman is assisted by four advisors, some of them being sub-headmen:

- 1 Rapai Saku
- 2 Mokolopiemang Seeme
- 3 Morwa Mahura, died, lived at Myra.

The headman STANLEY MAHURA is a member of the Chief's council at Taung.

270 I visited the headman in January 1960.

D i s t r i c t:

271 Taung, Cape Province.

T r i b e:

272 Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana, totem: thó16.
(Kudu) Section of tribe No. 32-01 according to
"Preliminary Survey of the Bantu Tribes of S.A."
by N.J. van Warmelo. The survey number is no. No.
32-01.5 P

Present H e a d m a n:

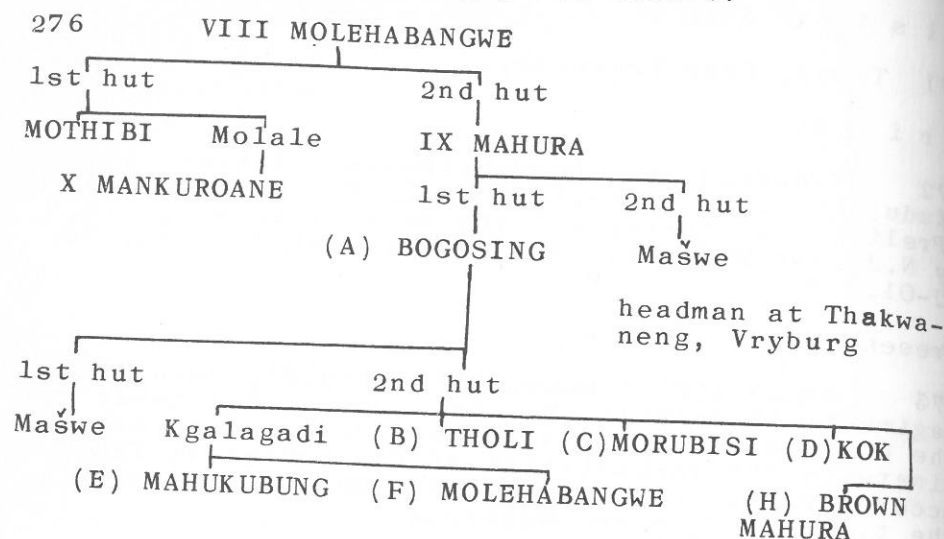
273 BROWN LEKULA KGOSIEBUANG MAHURA, born 1907,
regiment: Maakapula. He was appointed headman by
the Government on 1st November 1939, being subor-
dinate to the jurisdiction of the chief at Taung.
According to tradition he is a senior headman in
the tribe. Residence: Mogopela.

L a n d and strength of P o p u l a t i o n:

274 Mogopêla is the name of a spruit which is
also called Sekantsane in its upper reaches. The
southern boundary of the headman's area is the Jim
Molale Location of headman S.S.Kasienyane. The
western boundary is the road and railway line to
Vryburg and the Dry Harts or Mokgara up to Pudumoe
or the Matlhako Spruit. The eastern boundary is
formed by the North-Canal. A Location called
Pudumoe between the railway line, the Mokgara and
the Pudumoe Spruits is supervised by an unrecog-
nised sub-headman under the chief at Taung with
the name Sebegile Mothibedi. The village Mogopêla
which is 6 miles from Taung, is situated north of
the Sekantsane Spruit and east of the railway
line. For altitude and monthly rainfall figures
see the general introduction. The average annual
rainfall is about 17 inches.

275 The 1951 Population Census recorded the pop-
ulation of the areas of two headmen in one sub-
enumerator district and the figures are conse-
quently of little use. In 1957, 500 taxpayers were
registered under the headman. As some members of
the tribe are registered elsewhere it can be as-
sumed that the total population under the headman
exceeds 2000.

Skeleton Genealogy of chiefs:



History

277 The Mogopêla area appears to have been old land of the regent IX MAHURA. His eldest son of the first hut, (A) BOGOSING was the first headman here. He was born about 1825, regiment: Lohaha, by his first wife, Bakaileng, he had the son Maswe, born 1850/5, died 1923; by his second wife he had the sons:

- a Kgalagadi, born 1960 who had the sons (E) MAHUKUBUNG MAHURA and (F) MOLEHABANGWE MAHURA
- b THOLI, headman (B), whose sons died
- c MORUBISI, headman (C), son Maloka
- d KOK, headman (D), father of present headman
- e Tigêlô who died, his sons died
- f Moitsiemang Sekate who had the sons: Jerry Thibogang, Mahura, Charlie, Rasetlha, Kenamile.

278 Some time between 1883 and 1890, BOGOSING and his sons Kgalagadi and Kok left Mogopêla and settled on the Mashowing River. BOGOSING died after he had been taken prisoner during the Langeberg Rebellion (1897). After BOGOSING had left, his son (B) THOLI, born 1863, regiment: Mahenyakgosi, became headman, i.e. between 1883

and 1890. THOLI had a son by the name Smart who died. The headman himself died in 1914.

279 The next headman was THOLI's brother (C) MORUBISI, born in 1866. He had a son Maloka George who left the tribe. The headman died on 30th September 1919.

280 He was succeeded by his brother (D) KOK, born in 1869, regiment: Maletakgosi, who had come back from Moshaweng. KOK married Basadi and had the following children by her:

- a Jane m died
- b Mmamatlhalo f
- c BROWN MAHURA m born 1907, present headman
- d Motlhakane m died
- e Kebitsamang f died
- f NIEMAND m, born 1914, sub-headman of Dryharts
- g Mosalašuping m died.

KOK died in 1923.

281 The next headman was the son of Kgalagadi, (E) MAHUKUBUNG MAHURA, born in 1881. He became headman in 1923/4 and was officially appointed by the Government on 1st July 1926. He died on 9th November 1931.

282 The headman was succeeded by his younger brother (F) MOLEHABANGWE MAHURA, born in 1884 and appointed headman by the Government on the 1st December 1931. He died on 3rd December 1938.

283 The younger brother of the present headman (G) NIEMAND MAHURA, born 1914, was appointed as acting headman from 1st February 1939 until November 1939. NIEMAND is still living.

284 The present headman (H) BROWN LEKULA KGOSIEWANG MAHURA, assumed duty on 1st November 1939, also cf. paragraph 273. During his service in the Native Military Corps, (I) TSIKANG SAMONNE was acting for him from 1st May 1942 to October 1945. BROWN has the following wives and issue:

- 1 Georgina Maseganêlo, married according to civil rites,

- a Ngaka m born 1940
- b Lešole Soldat m
- c Dipeki m
- d Molehabangwe m
- e Kgong f

f-g died in youth

2 Elizabeth Bošupang

a-d died in youth

e Madipego f

f Mosadiwametse f

g Bojane f

3 Selina Photane

a Segōmotse f

P o l i t i c a l o r g a n i s a t i o n :

285 The headmanship of Mogopêla is not only hereditary, it also has a distinct traditional council system. The reason is that the area has always been under the direct influence of the regent IX MAHURA who acted for his senior though younger, brother Molale and his son X MANKUROANE.

286 The following clans are found in the headman's area:

1 boo Molale and

boo Mahura of the baKgosing clan, kgosana or head: Brown Mahura

2 ba ga Marumo, no clan head. This clan extends into the area of the neighbouring headman to the west,

3 ba ga Molehe, no clan head. This clan also extends into the area of the neighbouring headman to the west

4 boo Monyalenyane

5 boo Motlholoakgotse

6 Kgatla, Hurutshe and Rolong live scattered among the other clans.

287 The headman is assisted in the discussion of all local problems by a council of nine advisers. They are:

1 Tsikang Samonne

2 Sematlhe Abraham

3 Joseph Monnapula

4 Kok Samonne

5 Max Matlhe

6 John Manyoro

7 Mac Thipe

8 Richard Diphoko

9 Israel Mokwa.

288 For further information about schools, churches, etc. see the general introduction.

289 I visited the headman in January 1960.

D i s t r i c t:

290 Taung, Cape Province, former British Bechuanaland.

T r i b e:

291 Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana with few baRolong, Xhosa and baNgwaketse. Tribal totem: Kudu (thôlô).

P r e s e n t H e a d m a n:

292 JERRY MOTLHAMARE MAHURA, born 2.6.1927 was appointed headman on 1 January 1964. He has no jurisdiction and is subordinate to the jurisdiction of the chief at Taung. Residence: Dry Harts (named after the railway station), village: Kgobadi.

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n:

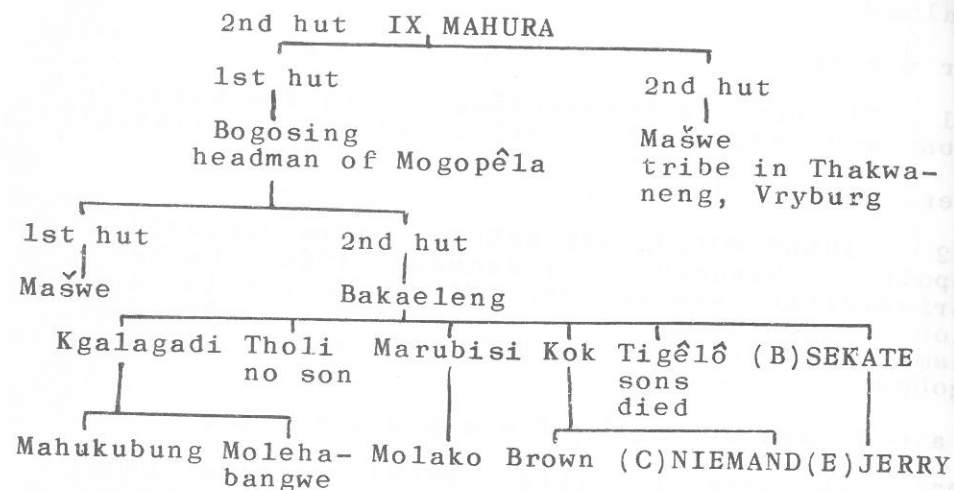
293 The area of this tribal section called "Dryharts" Location No. 35 "Area C", consists of the three northernmost farms of the Taung Native Reserve, i.e. of Roodepoort (2 933 morgen 255 sq. rds.), Vygeboomvlakte (3 334 morgen at 116 sq. rds.) and the Kgobadi area, the extent of which I estimate at 3 000 morgen. The total area under the headman is about 9 270 morgen. The altitude of the area is between 3 500 and 4 000 ft. above sea level. The average annual rainfall is about 17 inches. The Dry Harts (in Tswana: Mokgara) runs from north to south on the western side of the road and railway line through the headman's area.

294 The main village, Kgobadi, is situated one mile east of the railway station Dry Harts and is 18 miles from Taung. In the western corner of "Dry Harts" there is a village Moretela situated on both sides of the Mokgara spruit. The farm Vygeboomvlakte has a village called Ntšwanahatse, while in the south-western part of the farm Roodepoort there is a village, Maganeng.

295 The Census of 1951 recorded a population of 705 (323 male, 382 female.) for the area of the headman. Only 28 taxpayers were registered under the headman in 1957, which means that the majority of this area are registered elsewhere. I estimate the total population of the Location to be 1200 including about 350-400 absent workers.

Genealogy of Headmen:

296 VIII MOLEHABANGWE



(A) MASWE MOLALE and (D) MAKALELO LUCAS BAEPI have no genealogical connection.

History:

297 In about 1936, the farms of the Dry Harts area were added to the Taung Native Reserve in exchange for that portion of the Vaal Harts Irrigation Scheme which was then Native Area. The headmanship was in existence before this time, however, the headman living at Mokgareng III. The first headman according to departmental files was (A) MASWE MOLALE, who died on 21st October, 1929.

298 He was succeeded by (B) SEKATE MOITSEMANG BOGOSING MAHURA, born in 1883, regiment: Maakakgosi, who was officially appointed headman on 1st November, 1929. Until 1936 SEKATE lived at Mokgareng (=Motlhaping). He then took up residence at Kgobadi. Previously his area comprised Matlapaneng, Tšoseng and Mokgareng. SEKATE died on 5th November, 1955 in a road accident. For the descendance of his family see the chief's genealogy.

299 Mahura had a son Bogosing, and Bogosing had the following sons:

1 by the first wife, name unknown

a Mašwe

2 Bakaeleng, a Kwena

a Kgalagadi

b Tholi whose sons died

c Morubisi who has a son Maloka

d Kok, the father of Brown Mahura

e Tigêlô whose sons died

f SEKATE.

300 SEKATE had the following wives and issue:

1 Tsitsane, a Tlhaping deceased about 1925

had no issue

2 Boijane, a Rolong boo Ratlou, deceased in 1929

a Jerry Motlhamare m

3 Budinyane, a Tlhaping ba ga Phuduhutšwana

a Thibogang m born 1934

b Mangaka f married

c Mahura m born 1938

d Bogosing m died

e Tšonkane m

f female, died unnamed

g Maleuba f

4 Gobotsamang, a Kgatla

a male, died young

b Basetlha m

c Kitilwe f

d Kenamile m

e Lesego Gakeinee m.

301 For a few months after the headman's death in November 1955, his councillor, LUCAS BAEPI, born 1896, administered tribal affairs. Since then SEKATE's eldest son, (C) JERRY MOTLHAMANE MAHURA born 1927, member of the L.M.S. church, has been done so. At that time he was the assistant principal of the Molale Memorial School at Matlapaneng. In 1963 he gave up his educational post and was officially appointed headman on 1.1.1964. He was married to Sophia Kgakgamatšo who died in 1957. He then married Molly Molemoeng by whom he had two sons who died.

302 No distinct clans exist in the headman's area, because part of the settlement is still fairly recent. After the Kaukwe reserve was transferred to Taung, it falls under the headman at Dry Harts. Sub-headmen are in charge of the sub-areas of Dry Harts. These are:

For Kgobadi, Popong, Moretêla, Njwanahatse: White Mothibi

for Moganeng or Roodepoort: Niemand Mahura

for Baviaanskloof or New Kaukwe: Guard Mončwe

for Pudumoe and Myra: Monyenyane Mahura.

The headmanship is assisted by the above mentioned sub-heads and by the following councillors: Sedumedi (a Tlhaping), Gaokae Mokasi, Taki, Morwa Bonokwane, Rabokgosibotsile, Seotaeng, Seleke (a Rolong), all elected at a public meeting of the tribe.

303 I visited Jerry Mahura in April 1960 and 1965.

D i s t r i c t:

304 Taung, Cape Province.

T r i b e:

305 Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana, totem: thôlô (kudu). The Tribe is a section of tribe No. 32-01 according to the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu Tribes of South-Africa" by Dr. N.J. van Warmelo.

Present H e a d m a n:

306 KOBANE KINGSLEY SAKU, born 1911, regiment: Maakakgang. He was appointed headman by the Government on 1st January 1946 being subordinate to the jurisdiction of the tribal chief at Taung. Residence: Mapoitsile in the Magogong area.

L a n d and number of p o p u l a t i o n:

307 The headman controls the Magogong area of the tribe which is situated in the southern part of the tribal land between the ba ga Maidi country and the North (irrigation) Canal. The headman's village Mapoitsile is about 9 miles from the Magistrate's office by road. The headman's land comprises the areas of Magogong and Modutung in the Reserve. Modutung is the southernmost part of the headman's land. Magogong and the village Mapoitsile, on the Canal, are situated in the northern part. The village and area of Dikoteng (located in the north-eastern part) is shared half by the tribe under discussion and the ba ga Maidi. The village Mothanthanyane is already on the ba ga Maidi side. Until 1962 the Bogosing irrigation land fall under the control of the headman but was then placed under the control of the newly created post of Headman Baisitse (cf. par. 216). A Bantu Township will be established at Magogong.

308 The Altitude of Magogong and Modutung is below 4000 feet above sea level in the western half and above 4000 feet in the eastern half. The average annual rainfall is about 17 inches.

309 Topographically the Magogong area in the south of the Taung Native Reserve is hilly with steep slopes in the east. Only towards the Irrigation Scheme and the railway line the country is flat. The soil is a coarse sand which may have originated from basalts and quartzite. Here the land is not suitable for irrigation agriculture. The grazing in the dry land is sweetgrass and the scenery is described as Kalahari thorn and bush veld, with blackthorn, camelthorn trees, haak-, steek- and other sweet thorn and also vaalbos is

spread all over the area. The natural grazing capacity is ten morgen per cattle unit. The area is overstocked and only hard grasses remain. A change is expected by agricultural planning.

310 The planning in this part of land makes provision for four "wards", of which the southern three form the headman's area:

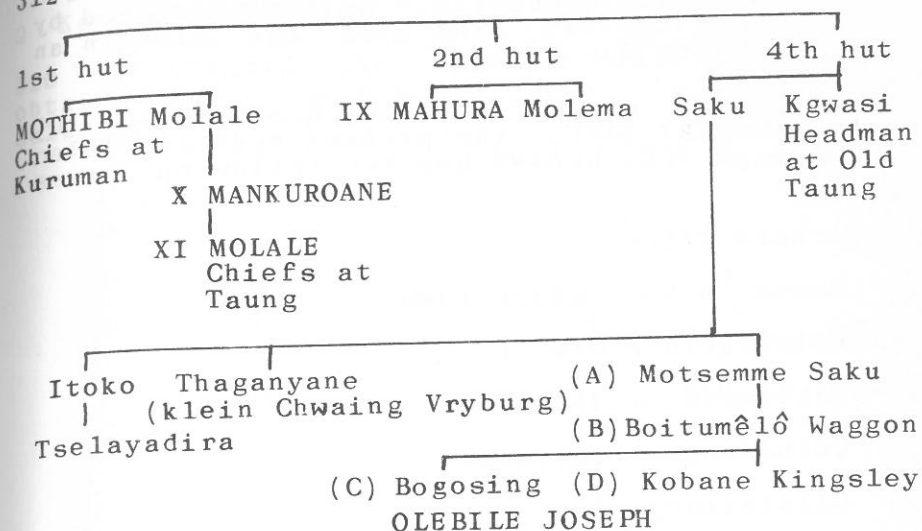
Ward	morgen i.extent	residen- tial area, morgen	grazing morgen	No.of planta- econo-tion mical morgen units	
Modutung	2469	15	2445	10	4
Magogong	3206	25	2910	12	6
do.town- ship		+230			
"Bogosing"	2712	20	2684	11	4
"Molale"	2636	20	2608	11	5

Every "ward" has three grazing camps.

311 The 1951 Population Census figures do not indicate the strength of the tribe, as portions of three headman's areas were included in one census sub district. In 1957, 779 taxpayers were registered under the headman, but this figure is not reliable. It is possible that the section of the tribe consists of 3000 members including absent workers.

Genealogy:

312 VIII MOLEHABANGWE



History:

313 The headmen of the Magogong area all descend from the house of Saku. Saku was a son in the 4th hut of chief VIII MOLEHABANGWE as shown in the genealogy of the previous paragraph. Saku's sons were Itoko, Thaganyane and Motsemme. Thaganyane and his descendents became the headmen of Klein Chwaing in Vryburg district. (A) MOTSEMME was the first headman for the Magogong area in the district of Taung. He died in about 1915 at a very old age.

314 (B) BOITUMÊLÔ WAGGON SAKU, his eldest son, succeeded to the headmanship. He became completely blind and as a consequence resigned from the headmanship on 31st May 1931. He died between 1940 and 1945. He had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Motlhabatshimo, died in 1925
 - a BOGOSING m,
 - b Orenayamang f
 - c KOBANE m
- 2 Maditlhosi, married after first wife had died
 - a Merodi f
 - b Morôkaotsile m deceased.

315 The next headman was (C) BOGOSING SAKU, the eldest son of the previous headman. He was born in 1906, regiment: Maakapula. He was appointed by the Government on 1st June 1931 and died in an accident on 14th May 1945.

316 BOGOSING was succeeded by his brother (D) KOBANE KINGSLEY SAKU, the present headman, also cf. paragraph 306. KOBANE has the following wives and issue:

1 Gasethata Elise

a Mmoko m born about 1940

b Kelebogile Flora f

c Boitumêlô m deceased

d Udiheleng m deceased

e Galaletsang f

f Monnapulê m

g Mathagamo f

h Mmaditlhose f

i Bogosing m

2 Josephine Mmamoithui

no issue.

KOBANE died on 4 September 1966 and BOGOSING'S (of par.314) son, OLEBILE JOSEPH SAKU, born 1941, succeeded.

R e g i m e n t s :

317 Regiments in an area of a dependent headmen are always those of his superior chief, cf. paragraph 201.

P o l i t i c a l o r g a n i s a t i o n :

318 Under headman SAKU there is only one complete clan or kgotla, namely the ba ga Saku. The remaining residents are scattered members of all the other clans of the ba Phududutswana.

319 The headman has two advisers who assist him in local matters. They are:

1 Paul Matsiêtsi

2 Keseentse Motôke.

320 I visited the tribe in January 1960 and obtained the above material from the headman himself and from his advisers.

D i s t r i c t:

321 Taung, Cape Province.

N a m e o f T r i b e:

322 Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana, Totem: thôlô (Kudu), including a Xhosa section. The Headman's people form part of the tribe Nr. 32-01 in the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu tribes of South Africa" by Dr. N.J. van Warmelo.

Present Headman:

323 BOTLHASITSE STANLEY SMOUS, born about 1910, was officially appointed headman on 26.6.1960 to the jurisdiction of Chief Thapama at Taung. Residence: Smousstat or Old Taung or Marope-a-tau.

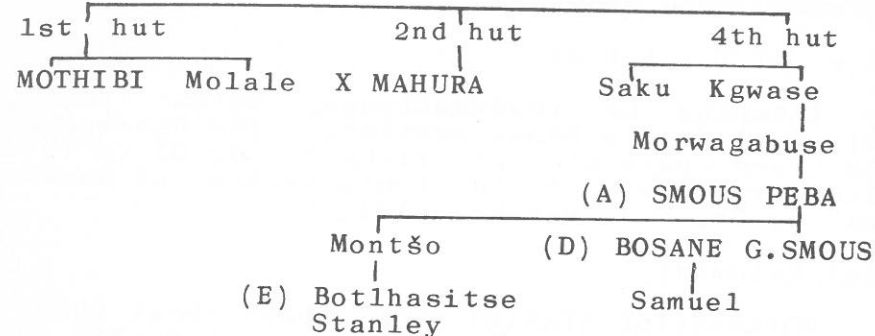
L a n d and strength of P o p u l a t i o n:

324 The area under the supervision of this headman is very small and is situated west and south of the present village Taung in the Taung Irrigation Scheme. The small portion of land west of Taung and the Kimberley-Vryburg railway line, and south of the Railway line to Norlim is called Old Taung or Smous, in seTswana Marope-a-tau. The latter is also the name of the village in which the headman resides. The other portion is called Matolong in seTswana, or "Moss" on certain departmental maps.

325 The 1951 population census is not taken on a tribal bases and can thus not be used to elaborate the number of souls of this tribal section. In 1957, 265 taxpayers were registered under the headman, which also gives no indication of the number of people residing in the headman's area. Some taxpayers may have registered themselves in towns and others may no longer exist. The tribal section probably consists of more than 1100 people, including absent workers. The size of the headman's area can only be estimated as follows, viz. Smous is about a $\frac{1}{2}$ by $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles and Moss is 2 by $2\frac{3}{4}$ miles. The annual rainfall and the altitude are the same as for Taung.

Skeleton genealogy of headmen:

326 VIII MOLEHABANGWE



not related:

(B) JOSEPH MOSS

(C) COLLIN MOSS

History:

327 The greatgrandfather of the present headman, Kgwase, was a son in a junior hut, probably the 4th, of Chief VIII MOLEHABANGWE. Kgwase, who was born about 1750/60, had the sons Morwagabusa and Leatsenyane who lived at Mokgareng. The present headman's greatgrandfather, Morwagabuse, born, about 1780/90 and dying about 1870/80, had the sons SMOUS PEBA and Matlokobela.

328 The first headman (A) SMOUS PEBA, born about 1810, lived at old Taung where he was a clan headman of the ba ga Smous. He married one wife, Letlonkane, and had the following children by her:

- a Modilati f
 - b Mamoetane m died, no male issue
 - c Montšo m died, son Botlhasitse and 8 others
 - d Morwagabuse m died, no male issue
 - e Meite m died, no male issue
 - f BOSANE GEORGE m
- SMOUS PEBA died when Bosane was born, i.e. in 1887.

329 The first Government appointed headman for the area was (B) JOSEPH MOSS who was headman until 1921. He is not known to the present population and it appears that he was not related to the chief's house at Taung. He was succeeded by the headman (C) COLLIN MOSS, appointed on 1st January 1922. He died on 19th September 1946.

330 The next headman was (D) BOSANE GEORGE SMOUS, born about 1887 (according to departmental files in 1895, but the headman said that he was about 10 years old in the time of Rinderpest - 1896/7), regiment Maakathata, initiated in 1918. He was officially appointed Headman on 1st December 1946. He married Keamogetse Anna Mosebiemang and had the following children by her:

- a Samuel Mosimanewakgotla m, born 1917, works as induna on Dominion Reef
- b Maetšhō m born 1918, deceased
- c Gabotlatlhōga Simon m born 1920
- d Thêbêitsile Solomon m born 1922
- e Miemie f born 1924
- f Piet Boatlhotšwe m born 1926
- g Morwagabusi Michael m born 1928
- h Mosimanegape m
- i Tholi m
- j Botiti m
- k Manene Bella f
- l Makhonene f

Smous died on 26 June 1960.

331 The present headman (E) BOTLHASITSE STANLEY SMOUS is a son of BOSANE's elder brother Montšo (also cf. par. 328). He married Elizabeth Matsukutšwane and has the following children by her:

- a Smous m
- b Barekwang m
- c David m

d Keakabetse f

e Keneilwe f

P o l i t i c a l s y s t e m :

332 This tribal section consists mainly of one clan, or rather sub-clan, the ba ga Smous. The headman has no independent jurisdiction. He has one adviser to help him in tribal affairs. This section is represented in the Bantu Tribal Authority of the baTlhaping at Taung, established by Proclamation No. 444 of 1957. A group of Xhosa also live under this headman. They immigrated under the government appointed headman Moss.

333 I visited the tribe in January 1960 and obtained the above- material from the headman and some old men.

TLHAPING MIXED

D i s t r i c t :

334 Taung, Cape Province, former British Bechuanaland.

T r i b e :

335 Mixed Tlhaping of the branches ba Phudu - hutswana, ba ga Molehe (= ba Phuduhudu), ba ga Moduana and few Rolong, Ngwaketse, and "Matebele" who are Xhosa, Fingo and Swazi. Tribal totem: Thôlô (kudu).

P r e s e n t H e a d m a n :

336 FRANK MOLEMA MABATSANE, born 1903, no regiment, member of the London Missionary Society Church. He was appointed by the Government on 1st December 1932, being subordinate to the jurisdiction of the chief at Taung. Residence: Letshajelešweu on the farm Witpan. The headman's area is also known as Banksdrift or Tlhaping.

L a n d a n d n u m b e r o f p o p u l a t i o n :

337 Witpan and Banksdrift comprising the headman's area are situated between Thoming and the Harts River. Witpan is the translation of the Tswana village name Letshajelešweu. The village is situated between the farm Bankdrift and the road going through Witpan from NW to SE, about 18 miles from Taung. The farm Bankdrift is 400 morgen and Witpan 2635 morgen 178 rds. in extent. There is a difference of opinion about the area this headman controls. It appears that as far as the government is concerned, the headman also controls the Motšweding (Mocwedding) area between Witpan and Mokassa. Prior to 1939, however, (i.e. after the appointment of F.M. Mabatsane as headman) the chief at Taung appointed a sub-headman, Clement Daumas, for the Motšweding area being directly subordinate to himself.

338 Headman Mabatsane claims that the eastern portion of Thoming (i.e. east of the railway line and a ridge called Lerôpô), is part of his area, while headman J.T. Ganoke of Thamasikwa considers that the whole of Thoming falls under him. Headman Mabatsane submits that sections of Thoming including Motšweding (also called Lower Thoming) were originally in charge of three headmen. One section was controlled by Headman Ganoke's family, one by Modisakomo (later by his son Thomas) and one by his own predecessors. During the time of his

predecessor Solomon Moeng Tshabaesele (before 1917) this eastern part of Thoming belonged to the present headmanship of Banksdrift/Witpan. Headman Ganoke, on the other hand, states that Thoming was originally a grazing area of the European family O'Reilly on which the chief of Taung placed some people under Ganoke's father. Part of Thoming was then controlled by headman Ganoke and part by an elder brother of the chief. Later Ganoke's father allocated the western section to Ben Riet, a moTšhweng. Subsequently the lime works at Buxton and Thoming were established but the former inhabitants continued to reside in the area. No decision can be made on traditional grounds about who is really the headman of the Thoming area.

339 The altitude of the headman's area is between 3500 and 4000 feet above sea level and the average annual rainfall is between 16 and 17 inches. In 1957, 100 taxpayers were registered under the headman. For the population figures see par. 101.

H i s t o r y :

340 The first headman over this area was (A) SOLOMON MOENG TSHABAESELE, who controlled it after the Langeberg Rebellion or Majeng-war, i.e. after 1897. He was a moRolong, who was not recognised by the Government and was probably in charge of the area until about 1917. Although appointed by his chief MOLALE at Taung, he was also headman over a portion of land which had belonged to chief GALESHEWE who ceased to be a chief after 1897. According to the departmental files a certain (B) WILLIAM TEPE (or possibly THEBE) was the first Government headman. He was deposed on the 30th June 1917, after having been found guilty of stock theft. My informants and the present headman know nothing about a man of this name. His appointment of headmen in this early days of the administration.

341 The next headman was (C) MOLEMA MABATSANE, who was appointed by the Government with effect from 1st August 1917. He was a commoner of the Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana section of the tribe who served as a policeman after the Langeberg Rebellion. This headman, born about 1870, was a son of Molema and a grandson of Gabaitumele. While serving at Dithakwaneng (Vryburg district) as a policeman he had an illegitimate son Podise ("Police") born about 1900/01. By his lawful wife Moditsane, he had the following issue:

- a Sannie f
- b Keatlholetšwe f
- c Mantaotse f
- d Gakipopeng f
- e Mosetsanagape f
- f Moleme Frank m
- g Ogolotse m died.

The headman died on 17th September 1932.

342 He was succeeded by (D) his son, FRANK MOLEME MABATSANE, the present headman, cf. par. 336. FRANK married Motswamasimo Rebecca, a mo-Tlhaping boo Marumo and has the following issue by her:

- a Kgosietsile m born 1930
- b Keatlholetswe f
- c Monyeseng f
- d Opaletšwe m died
- e Gobopamang f
- f Samane m twins
- g Samanyane f
- h Mosibudi f twins
- i Mosibutsana f
- j Motšusimang m
- k Mušo m
- l Boabilwe m.

P o l i t i c a l o r g a n i s a t i o n :

343 The tribal section is composed of various Tlhaping and others as mentioned in par. 335. The Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana are of the Mosakga clan. The tribal section forms part of the Taung Tribal Authority. The headman discusses his local affairs with two advisers, a third having died some years back.

344 I visited the headman in July 1960, and obtained most of the above information from him.

D i s t r i c t:

345 Taung, Cape Province.

T r i b e:

346 Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana of the Kgosing ba ga Madilwe section and Tlhaping ba ga Molehe (32-05), totem: thôlô (Kudu) and a majority of baTshweng, totem: Tshwene (baboon). This tribe is No. 32-01.10 in the Ethnological Survey, based on the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu Tribes of South Africa". The number for the baTshweng is 32-19.

Present headman:

347 PIET OLEHILE SEOLOSENG, born 1920, regiment Leakakgang (1948), was appointed Headman on 7 August 1965, being subordinate to the jurisdiction of the chief at Taung. Residence: Vaaltyn Location No. 33, P.O. Langwater.

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n:

348 This section occupies an area of about 6 by 12 miles in extent along the western boundary of the district. It is situated between the Taung-Reivilo Road or the Modutung spruit in the north and the northern boundary of the European owned farm Hoekplaats in the south. The eastern boundary of the headman's area runs halfway between Tlhaping and the district boundary, adjoining Thamasikwa or Buxton Location. There are the following villages in this area:

Qoo or Bayer's Halt a former Hottentot village where the Tlhaping ba Molehe live and which is situated on the Modutung spruit,

Qale or Thale, south of Qoo, a baTšhweng village

Vaaltyn, south-west of Thale, the headman's residence.

For altitude and annual rainfall see the figures given for the chief's area around Taung, par. 25.

349 The population census of 1951 was not taken on a tribal basis and the areas of Vaaltyn and of Thamasikwa were included in one census sub-enumerator which recorded 3700 people for the two areas. Probably one quarter of the population belonged to the Vaaltyn area. In 1957, 100 taxpayers were registered under the headman. However, many members of the tribe were registered in towns. I

estimate the present population under the headman to be about 1500 people including temporarily absent workers.

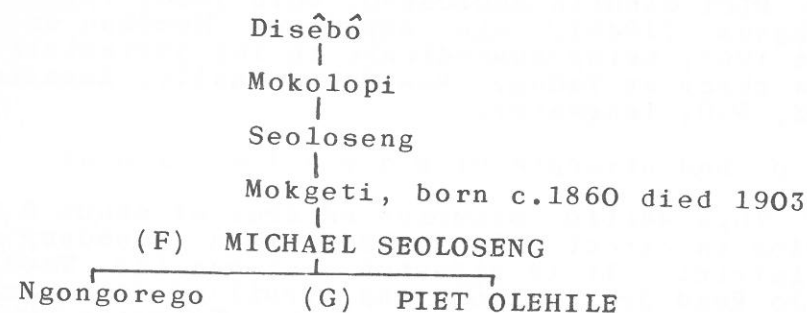
Skeleton genealogy of H e a d m e n:

350 The baTshweng headmen cannot be grouped in a genealogical tree though the baTshweng have their clan organisation here

(D) Gosiane

(E) Ben

351 The present headman is descended from the head of the royal Maditwa clan. His forefathers were:



H i s t o r y:

352 The Vaaltyn area appears to be old Hottentot and baTshweng country, which extended further west and north-west away from the district of Taung. In 1903, during the rule of Chief XI MOLALE (second, 1891-1920) the first headman, (A) HANS PÔWE, was appointed. He was a moTshweng, and was elected as headman by his people. He died at a very old age in 1906.

353 His successor was (B) THAELO MOEHI, born 1888, who was appointed by chief XI MOLALE in 1906. He was also a moTshweng and still ruling when the Government appointed a certain (C) PIET GOSIAME as a headman in 1911/2. The latter was a moTshweng who descended from the baTshweng at Metšwetsaneng in the Bothetheletse Reserve in Kuruman district. (For the baTshweng history see "The tribes of Kuruman and Postmasburg Districts" Ethnological Publications). The tribe was opposed to this appointment and deposed PIET who died soon afterwards on 17th December 1926.

354 The next headman was (D) TŠOLOHÊLÔ GOSIANE who was in office for only one year, becoming

blind. He was appointed on 24th January 1927. His son, (E) ONKABETSE BEN GOSIAME, born 1914/5, was then appointed headman, with effect from 1st April 1945. Although relinquishing office on the 29th February 1948, he is still living.

355 Headman, (F) MICHAEL SEOLOSENG, born in 1888 (1891 according to departmental files is not correct) succeeded to the office on 1st March 1948. He is descended from the chief's sub-clan, Maditwa, which means that he is not a moTshweng, but a Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana. He had the following wives and issue:

1 Sebusang

a Ngongorego m born August 1918

b Piet Olehile m born 1920

c Meêpadire m born 1925

d Lokutlhile f

e Meshael Isaak m 1930

f Mokgeti m deceased

g Poule f

2 Maria Ntshenene, married after the death of the first wife

a Monnapula m born 1930

b Gaselele f.

356 The headman said that his father, Mokgeti, was a headman (born about 1860, died 1903). He probably means by it that his father was a clan headman of the ba ga Maditwa.

357 Michael died on 22 August 1965 and his second son, (G) Piet Olehile succeeded as headman (cf. par.355).

358 His school education is stand.I and he is a member of the Methodist Church. He married Relina and has the following children by her:

a Disêbô Looseboy m

b Georgina Keemelemang f

c Mabatlhaping deceased

d Keitumetse f

e Mosimeotsile m

f Kemoelami f

g Selina f

P o l i t i c a l s y s t e m:

359 The population consists of three different sections:

- 1) The majority are baTshweng and so were the headman until 1948.
- 2) The second group are Tlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana of the headman's clan
- 3) Tlhaping ba ga Molehe, under a subhead Orekgeng Segwesapelo, who resides at Qoo or Bayer's Halt.

The headman is assisted by two advisers:

Motlhabane Motelese, a Rolong and

Motshabi Moehi, a moTshweng.

360 I obtained the above material in January 1960 from the headman and his advisers.

D i s t r i c t:

361 Taung, Cape Province.

T r i b e:

362 Tlhaping ba ga Marumo.

H e a d m a n:

363 JOHN THÊIYO GANOKE, born 1898, regiment: Maakathata (1918). He was appointed headman by the Government from 1st April 1942 to 1st June 1957 and again officially from 1st April 1960. The headman is subordinate to the jurisdiction of the chief at Taung. Residence: Thamasikwa in the Buxton Location No. 30.

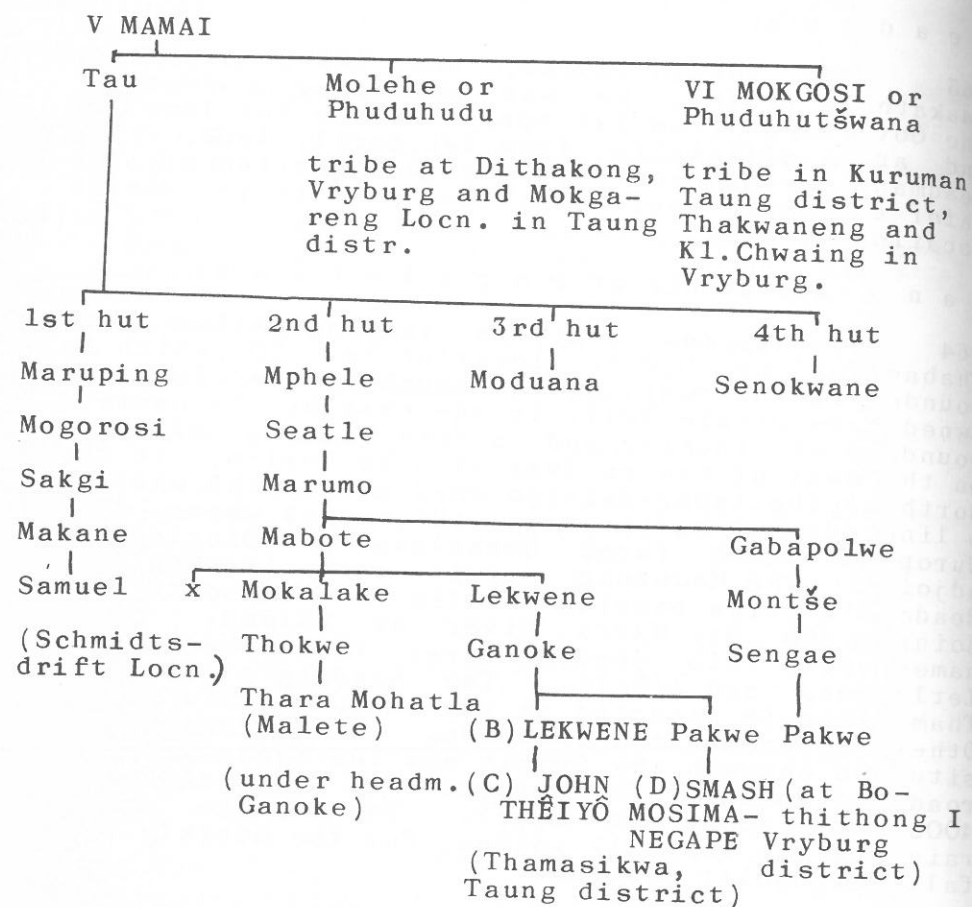
L a n d and number of P o p u l a t i o n:

364 The headman controls the Thamasikwa (not Thabasikwa) or Buxton Location No. 30 which is bounded as follows: in the south by the European owned farm Dingleydell, in the east by the eastern boundary of Thoming and a line running slightly on the west of the railway line to Norlim, in the north by the Taung-Reivilo road and in the west by a line running north from the point where the European owned farms Hoekplaas and Dingleydell adjoin. The Modutung spruit runs through the Headman's area passing Norlim on the south and joining the Dry Harts River or Kolong. Other names for this spruit are: Thamasikwa, Mang Letlhaping and //ôth. The headman's village, Thamasikwa, is situated to the south of this spruit. Other villages are Takwaneng or Witkraaltjies, situated between the Spruit and the Taung-Reveilo road and Buxton. The altitude is slightly above 4000 feet above sea level. The average annual rainfall is about 17 inches; for the monthly rain fall cf. table: par. 25.

365 The population census of 1951 was not taken on a tribal basis in this part of the district. For the areas of the headman of Vaaltyn and Thamasikwa together, the Census recorded 3700 people. Probably three quarters of this population belonged to Thamasikwa. In 1957, 317 taxpayers were registered under the headman. However, many members of the tribe are registered in towns. I estimate the present population under the headman to be roughly about 4500 including absent workers.

S k e l e t o n g e n e a l o g y o f c h i e f s :

366 It will be noted that this genealogy of the Tlhaping boo Marumo differs from the information obtained at Bothithong, as described in the book "The tribes of Vryburg district", (Ethnological Publications Nr. 46, par. 444). Thokwe Malete at Thamasikwa is better informed about the history of his tribe.



H i s t o r y :

367 As shown in the above skeleton genealogy, the forefathers of the Maruping-Marumo branch of the Tlhaping were the most senior of all Tlhaping, although, for the past 200 years, the political power has been vested in the ba ga Phuduhutswana branch. The ba ga Marumo consist of two branches: 1) that of Mabotho in Taung district and 2) that of Gabapolwe at Bothithong in Vryburg district. Long ago already a certain Makaleka was a clan headman of the ba ga Marumo, and he was subordi-

nate to the chief of the ba ga Phuduhutswana branch of the Tlhaping.

368 On 1st March 1930, the Government appointed a certain TOLMAN DIPALANE as the first official headman (A). He was merely appointed by the Native Commissioner and was not related to the chief's family. On 7th February 1933 he was deposed because of stock theft.

369 The second officially appointed headman was (B) LEKWENE GANOKE born between 1860 and 1865, regiment: Maletakgosi, appointed on 1st April 1934. The headmanship was suspended from 15th June 1937 to 1st November 1937. After becoming blind, he withdrew from the headmanship on 1st March 1942. He died in 1953. He had married Maria, by whom he had the following children:

- a John Thēiyō m the present headman
- b Seakangwang f
- c Gasebeki f
- d Mamakgobe f
- e Mantai f
- f Masethulēla f.

370 The headman was succeeded by his son (C) JOHN THĒIYŌ GANOKE, born in 1898, regiment: Maakathata, appointed on 1st April 1942. On 1st June 1957, the headman terminated his services on establishing a general dealer's store. He married Asēlang Ntokwe, who has the following children:

- a-f six children died in youth
- g Oganelweemang Grace f
- h Magasithilwe Christina f
- i Marame f
- j died in youth
- k Maharries Emmely f
- l Mosadiwaseakwa f deceased
- m Ramasolalabele m deceased

- n Kanana m born 1944
- o Mosimanewapula m
- p and q m and f died in youth
- r Mosadiwapitšo f.

371 On 7th July 1957, (D) SMASH MOSIMANEGAPE was officially appointed as headman, Like JOHN THĒIYŌ he is also a grandson of Ganoke who was born about 1840 (regiment: Majapōō) and died in 1899. By his first wife Ganoke had two sons: Lekwene and Gasetilwe; by his second wife the son Pakwe. Pakwe is the father of SMASH. SMASH married Bontshang Elsie Lefifi. He had the following children:

- a Madinoga f
- b Malesego f
- c Pakwe m
- d Bushy f.

372 He died on 19th March 1959. JOHN THĒIYŌ GANOKE was reappointed as headman on 1st April 1960, (cf. par. 363).

373 Headman GANOKE has the following wives and children:

- 1 Malefifi, a Rolong
 - a son died
- 2 Helemene of the Rolong boo Rratlou of headman Letsapa
 - a Lekwene m
 - b Gasetilwe
- 3 Malesego, a Ngwaketse, (was married to chief Batweng's first son, at Kanye in Botswana)
 - a Pakwe.

P o l i t i c a l o r g a n i s a t i o n :

374 This tribal section consists merely of the ba ga Marumo branch which is now regarded as a clan, the sub clans being ba ga Mokalake and ba ga Lekwene.

375 The Headman is assisted in his work by the following advisers:

- 1 J.J. Moseradibe
- 2 Kgosiejang Sekonyane
- 3 Kese Kgosiemaka
- 4 Masinčo Raido
- 5 Moraijane Raido.

The larger number of advisers, as compared with other ordinary headman, indicates that the headman is the head of a separate and semi-independent branch of the Tlhaping.

376 I obtained the above material in January 1960 from the headman himself and his advisers.

D i s t r i c t :

377 Taung, Cape Province.

T r i b e :

378 Tlhaping ba Phuduhudu or ba ga Molehe and Phuduhutswana (of Dibere). Totem: thôlô (Kudu). These people are subordinate to the chief of tribe No. 32-01, as numbered in the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu tribes of South Africa". By descent, however, they are part of the section of Tlhaping which are numbered 32-05 in the Preliminary Survey. These are the ba Molehe boo Thue who live in Vryburg and ba Molehe boo Thipa who are senior and live in Taung, Barkly West and Schmidtsdrift.

Present H e a d m a n :

379 KEBALEPILE STANLEY NTOKWE, born 1922, regiment: Maakakgang, no education. He was appointed headman by the Government on 1st January, 1952, being subordinate to the jurisdiction of the chief at Taung. Residence: Mokgareng I.

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n :

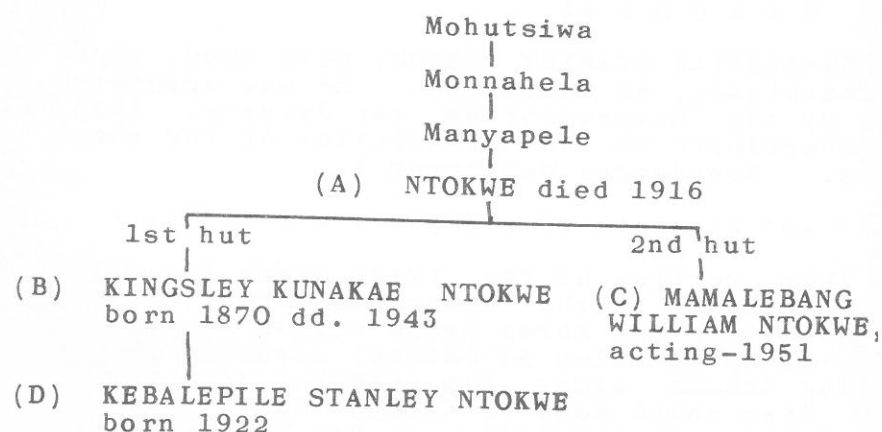
380 This section of the tribe under the chief in Taung lives in the Mokgareng area of the district. There are three areas called Mokgareng: No. III (2 by $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles in extent) situated in the Irrigation Scheme along the western side of the railway line north west of Taung; No. I, 4 miles west of Taung with the Kolong or Dry Harts forming its eastern boundary, the Taung-Reivilo road and the Modutung spruit its southern boundary, the district boundary its western confine, the Nkabang spruit its northern boundary; Mokgareng No. II is north of the Nkabang and Maditung spruits (running into the Mokgareng Dam). The area is called Matlapaneng to avoid any misunderstanding. This part belongs to headman Sedumedi (tribal survey No. 32-01.2).

381 The Nkabang area, north of the bend is the Nkabang spruit in Mokgareng II, formerly fell under an unrecognised headman Lešobo Stoffel Mankuroane, brother of Molale Mankuroane II. Later this area was under the control of an unrecognised headman Mapadira who was now succeeded by De Beer Rabodigêlô Mankuroane, the son of Stoffel who is still living but blind. He is subordinate to headman Ntokwe and appointed by the chief Thapama. Originally Lešobo was the headman of Mokgareng No.

I and No. II. In the Mokgareng area are the following villages: Mokgareng I and II, Nkabang on the Nkabang spruit towards the district boundary, and Goôrôgô, 4 miles west of Mokgareng I. For altitude and rainfall see notes concerned of the chief's place at Taung.

382 The population census of 1951 recorded 1163 souls (567 male, 596 female) for the area. In 1957 142 Taxpayers were registered under the headman. This may be one-third of the actual number of taxpayers including those registered in towns. I estimate the present population to be about 1500 not including absent workers whom I estimate to be between 600 and 800.

383 Genealogy of Headmen:



History:

384 The majority of the population under the headman belongs to the high ranking ba ga Molehe or baPhuduhudu section of the Tlhaping. This section has several branches: 1) the senior ba ga Molehe boo Thipa who live in the area under discussion and 2) the baMolehe boo Thue who live in Dithakong in Vryburg district. 3) The line of descendants of the sections of ba ga Molehe under headman Matlhole in Legobate in Kuruman district and 4) those in the Schmidtsdrift Location No. 1 & 2, under headman Thomas Leburu. The minority at Mokgareng are Tlhaping ba Phuduhutswana, (the tribe at Taung) under the clan headman Dibere Mankuroane, who resides in Mokgareng II.

385 I cannot say in what way this senior section of Tlhaping ba ga Molehe is related to Molehe or his grandson Motshabi. My informants

can only remember the genealogical tree back to Mohutsiwa, who had a son Monnahela I, whose son was Manyapele, the father of the first headman of Mokgareng.

386 The first Headman was (A) NTOKWE MANYAPELE, born 1840, died in 1916. Ntokwe had the following sons by 4 wives: in the 1st hut: Kingsley, in the 2nd hut: William Mamalebang and Kgotlangwe (still living), in the 3rd hut: Senaalanive who died and in the 4th hut Thataitsile who died.

387 Ntokwe was succeeded by his son (B) KINGSLEY KUNAKAE NTOKWE, born about 1870, regiment Maletakgosi. He was also a chief's messenger of the court. He became ill in 1940 and died in 1943. From 1940 to 1950 his brother of the second hut, (C) MAMALEBANG WILLIAM NTOKWE, acted on behalf of Kingsley and, after his death, on behalf of his son KEBALEPILE (the present headman). Kingsley married Gorileng and had the following children by her:

- a Keakabetse f deceased
- b Ašelang f
- c twins died in youth
- d Keilesitse f
- e Kelebogile d deceased
- f German m deceased
- g died unnamed
- h Tebele Jackson m deceased
- i Kebalepile m (present headman)
- j James m deceased
- k Itumeleng m deceased
- l f died in youth.

388 The present headman, (D) KEBALEPILE STANLEY NTOKWE, succeeded to the office in 1950, his official appointment however dating from the 1st January 1952. He married Moniemang Ester by whom he has the following children:

- a Motšariemang Phillip m born 1947
- b Gaolatlhe Bani m, born 1948
- c Gotsileakgosi Victor m born 1950
- d Manyapelo Samuel m born 1952
- e Setšwarapelo m, born 1954
- f and g twins died in youth
- h Munic (named after a reverend) m, born 1957
- i Maromi f, born 1959.

Political system:

389 This tribal section consists of two wards or clans;

1 Tlhaping ba ga Molehe

including Rolong ba Sehuba and ba Mokgôpa and Kgatla ba Mašoga of Manaana

2 Tlhaping of Dibere.

390 The headman is assisted by five advisers:

- 1) Crosby Monnahela
- 2) Johannes Moalusi
- 3) Andrew Moteane
- 4) Skaaf Mosielele
- 5) Wheel Molatlegi.

391 This section of the Tlhaping is represented on the "Baphuduhutswana Tribal Authority" at Taung established by Proclamation No. 444 of 1957.

392 I visited the tribe in January 1960 and obtained the above material from the headman and his advisers.

District:

393 Taung, Cape Province.

Tribes and totem:

394 Tlhaping ba ga Maidi, totem: thôlô (kudu). The tribe is No. 32-12 in the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu tribes of South Africa" by Dr. N.J. van Warmelo.

Chief:

395 WALTER LETSIE MOTLHABANI, born on 3rd March 1930, regiment: Mašêla (1944). He attended the L. M. S. school for the baTlhaping up to standard VI and passed the Jun. cert. examination at the Tigerkloof Institution, after which he was employed for 5 years on clerical work in Johannesburg. He was appointed chief by the Government on 5th May 1958 and exercises civil and criminal jurisdiction. Residence: Manthe, in the Manthe Location No. 14.

Language:

396 Tlhaping dialect of seTswana.

Land and strength of population:

397 The chief's area is in the eastern part of the district of Taung. In the east and south the tribal area is bounded by the district boundary. In the north the Harts River is the tribal boundary, although the tribe claims to have the Setlhabeng area communally with the Tlhaping baPhuduhutswana and that their boundary should be the Modimong Spruit. In the west the boundary is not clearly defined the area being unsurveyed. This boundary goes from S. to N. between the villages of Sedukung on the Maidi side and Modutung and Magogong on the Phuduhutswana side; the areas and villages of Mothanthanyaneng, Dikoteng, Gamokake and Phitšong are on the Maidi side; a triangle between the Harts River and the main road to Taung belongs to the Phuduhutswana, although it is claimed by the ba ga Maidi who consider that the road should be the boundary because their tribe contributed the money to build the bridge over the Harts River and supplied the necessary labour, while the ba ga Phuduhutswana gave no support to the project.

398 The definition of the tribal area according to the Bantu Authority Proclamation No. 44/1957 is as follows:

From the point where the boundary common to the Taung Native Reserve and the farm Pendomer (Tau. 1.1) intersects the centre line of the Harts River thence downstream along the centre line of the Harts River to a point opposite a beacon on the southern bank of that river near the Kolong Hill; thence in a general southerly direction to the said beacon and along a line of beacons to the beacon common to the Taung Native Reserve and the farms Lowestoft (Vry.16.36) and Rockdale (Vry.16.35) on the boundary common to the Taung and Warrenton Districts; thence in a general easterly direction along the boundary common to the Taung and Warrenton Districts to the beacon common to Koppie Enkel (Tau.1.4), Blackpool (Vry. 16.40) and Aden No. 72 where the said boundary meets the boundary common to the Christiana and Warrenton Districts and the Christiana and Taung Districts; thence in a general north-easterly direction and then in a general north-westerly direction along the boundary common to the Taung and Christiana Districts to the beacon common to the farms Tweelingpan (Tau. F.1. 4), Smitskraal No. 50, Amsterdam No. 43 and Home Rule (Tau. 1. 3)1 thence in an easterly direction along the boundary common to Tweelingpan (Tau.F.1.4) and Home Rule (Tau.1.3) and then in a general northerly direction along the boundary common to Thlapeng (Tau. F. 1.3) and Home Rule (Tau. 1. 3) to the beacon common to Thlapeng (Tau. F. 1. 3), Home Rule (Tau. 1. 3) and Killarney (Tau. 1. 2); thence along the boundary common to Thlapeng (Tau.F.1.3) and Killarney (Tau. 1.2) to the beacon common to Pendomer (Tau. 1. 1), Killarney (Tau. 1. 2) and Thlapeng (Tau. F. 1.3); thence along the boundary common to Pendomer (Tau. 1.1) and Thlapeng (Tau.F. 1. 3) and Pendomer (Tau. 1. 1) and the Taung Native Reserve to the point of commencement.

399 Manthe is named after the Manthe spruit which runs from Tweelingspan west into the Harts River. The confluence appears to be another point of the boundary between the two tribes. The Manthe spruit has two tributaries from the south, namely the Mabereng and the Shepane. There is a dam at Kokoming. In the tribal area are the following villages:

- 1 Manthe, the chief's residence on the Manthe spruit

- 2 Pitšong, on the Sekatseng spruit
- 3 Gamokake, between the Sekatseng and the Gamokake spruit
- 4 Ditskoteng, South of 3
- 5 Sedukung, N E of Mothanthanyane
- 6 Longaneng, N N E of 5
- 7 Molelema, on both sides of the road near Kokoming in the S E
- 8 Kokoming, on the farm with the same name, towards the centre of the farm
- 9 Mamutle, in the western corner of the farm Panmure
- 10 Matseng, in the eastern corner of the farm Tweelingspan
- 11 Dipuding, in the triangle between the farm Home Rule and the road to Schweizer Reneke
- 12 Tlapeng, the northern corner of the tribal area between the farm Home Rule and Harts River
- 13 Modutung, west of Tlapeng near the Harts River
- 14 Mothanthanyaneng, in the west.

There is no village in the Setlhabeng area.

400 Manthe is 13 miles from Taung station by road and 10 miles from Magistrate's office. The altitude of the tribal area is slightly above 4000 ft. above sea level, except the beds of the Harts and Manthe rivers which are below 4000 feet. The average annual rainfall is slightly below 17 inches falling 45 days (measured for 35 years before 1936 for Taung). For monthly rainfall compare par. 25.

401 The Population Census of 1951 recorded the following figures:

	males	females	total	with natural increase 1960
Tlapeng under headman Sengwedi	586	657	1243	1460
S E area under headman Makgêthê	754	830	1584	1870
Kgantlapane Molelema and Manthe together (but including the Magogong area of the neighbouring tribe)	1551	1788	3339	3940
Totals	2891	3275	6166	7270

402 In 1957 the following number of taxpayers was registered under the headmen of the tribe.

George Kgantlapane	482
Benj.M. Kgantlapane	565
Makgêthê Kgantlapane	149
Keretetse F. Senwedi	166
Total	1362.

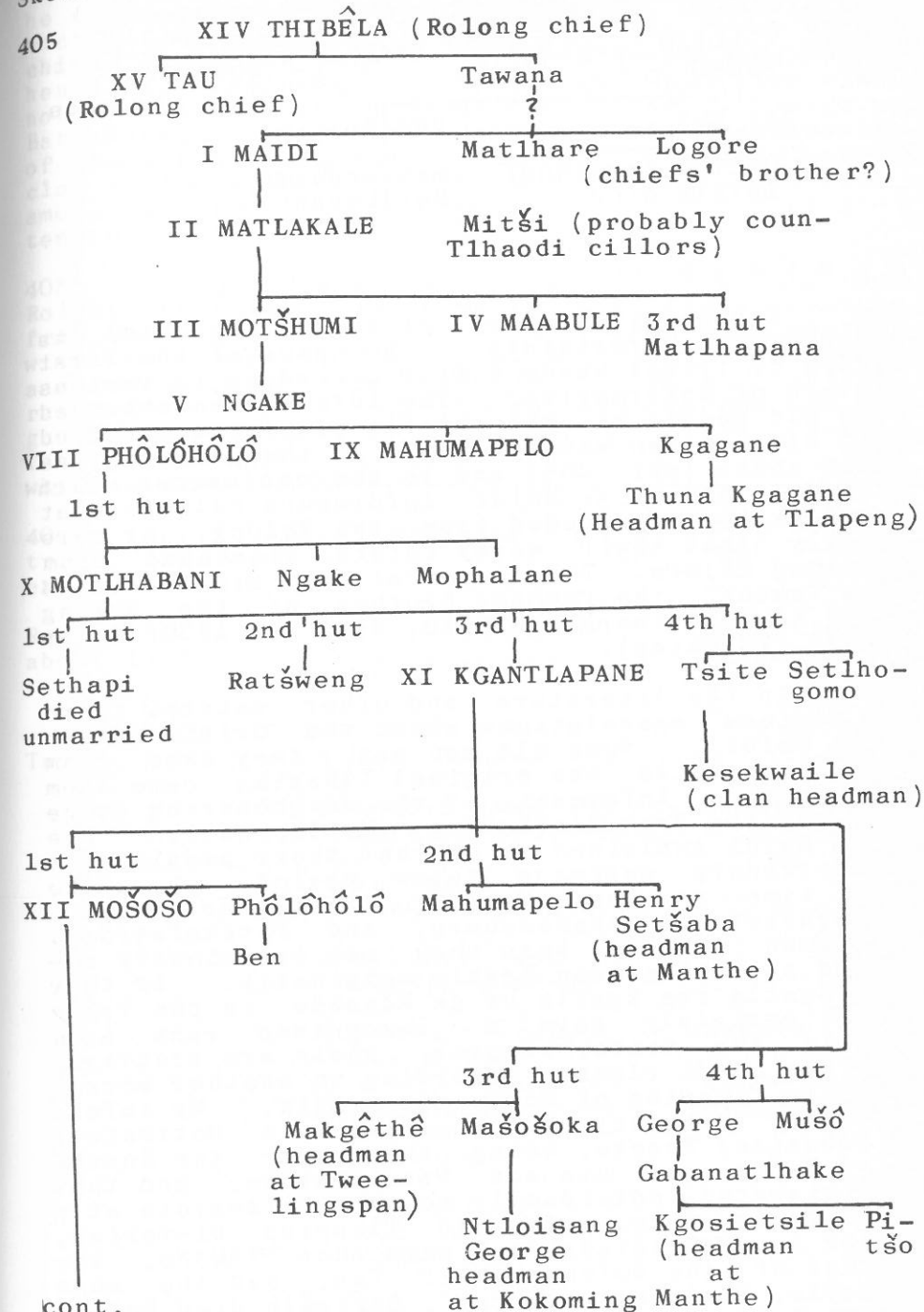
The figures are very low and many taxpayers must be registered elsewhere. I estimate the total tribal population, including absent workers at 11 000.

M i g r a t i o n s and affinities of tribe:

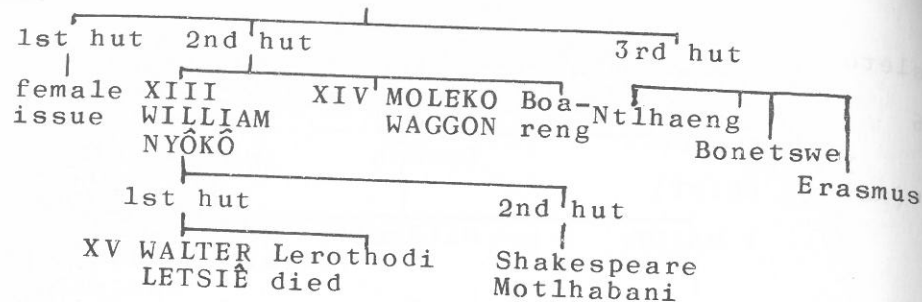
403 The former places of residence of the tribe cannot be determined with any certainty. For several generations the tribe lived at Gamorana in Kuruman and near Bothithong in Vryburg District. A place Dinokana is mentioned, but its whereabouts is unknown. It is not likely that the Dinokana in Marico district is meant.

404 The tribe believes that it is related to the Rolong and Tlhaping. However, there is also information that it comes from some other tribe in the Western Transvaal. In the second half of the 19th century it appears that the бага Maidi were somehow attached to the baTlhaping of Galešewe, of Pokwane and not to Mankuroane who claimed the superiority over them.

Skeleton genealogy of chiefs:



cont.



History:

406 The early history of the ba ga Maidu is clouded with uncertainty. The names of the first chiefs or tribal heads differ according to various sources of information. The information obtained from old people at the chief's place as compared with old written sources leads to the genealogy as given above (par. 405) and to the conclusions which follow. All ba ga Maidu informants believe that their tribe descended from the Rolong, or more exactly that their early chiefs descended from baRolong chiefs. They say that they are descended from Tawana, the younger brother of the Rolong chief XV TAU (born 1620/50, died c. 1730/40 at Mosita, Mafeking).

407 In the literature and other sources there are various speculations about the origin of the ba ga Maidu. Some old men say, they came from the North while the original Tlhaping came from the South. Informants of the neighbouring tribe say they are from Klerksdorp (Matlhossane). The ba ga Maidu explained to me that their people went to Klerksdorp during a later period, about the same time as they went to Schweizer Reneke, Wolmaransstad, Johannesburg, and Potchefstroom. Tribesmen complain that they are erroneously regarded as having been Kgatla originally. If they were Kgatla the Kgatla ba ga Manaana in the tribe would certainly have a recognized rank as a clan in the tribe, however, these are scattered over the Maidu clans. According to another source they are Tlhaping of Hottentot origin. My informants say that they intermarried with Hottentots in Schweizer Reneke, being then under the Korana chief Mošweu and his son Paratlhathe, and that they migrated individually to the Hottentots at a much later date. The old Tlhaping historian, Mariba in Schmidtsdrift, says that TAWANA, the brother of the Rolong chief Tau, had the sons Seêtsêla, Tlala and others. Seêtsêla died before

he could marry a girl by the name of Nkgabele and that Tlala raised up seed for him, the first Maidu chief then being born. My informants had never heard of these names. The ba ga Maidu are also not identical with the lost tribe, the Bathamaga or Batsatsing. Also the bataung, the descendants of the Digoja (Lighoya), are not recognized as a clan in the tribe. Their members live scattered among the tribe, which shows that no special attention is being paid to them.

408 In the second half of the 17th century the Rolong chief TAU had come to the Taung country from Setlhagole and Mosita and somehow amalgamated with the Tlhaping. In about 1720/30 the baRolong and baTlhaping separated again and TAU had to retreat to Mosita. It is not known where the ba ga Maidu lived under their first tribal heads. The tribal name indicates that they were a clan which became independent.

409 The following genealogies of chiefs of the tribe show how sources differ (in brackets my explanations):

Rev. Jennings about 1920	Chief XII MOŠOŠO ^{XYA} information supplied 1928	Departmental files of 1926
Tau	1 Tau, Tawana	
	2 Logore (was a chief's brother)	Legore
	3 Matlhare (name unknown today)	
	4 Moduane (was Tlhaping name)	
	5 Maabule (regent for Maidu)	Mabule
	6 Matlakale (name occurs at Tweelingspan)	Matlakale
	7 Tlhaodi (father and son, important councilors)	
	8 Mici (probably a councillor)	

Rev. Jennings about 1920	Chief XII MOSÔSÔ [✓]	Departmental information supplied files of 1928 1926
Mochumi	9 Mochumi	
Kgatsele (tribal praise name)	10 Maidu	Maidu
Maidu	11 Nake	Ngake
Phôlôhólô	12 Phôlôhólô	Motlhabani Phôlôhólô
Motlhabani	13 Motlhabani	
	14 Sethapi (son of 13)	
	15 Rachwene (son of 13 Kgantlapane Motlhabani)	
Kgantlapane	16 Kgantlapane (son of 13)	
Mosheshe	17 Moshosho	Moshesh Kgantlapane

410 The informants of today say that Logore was no chief but that he may have been a chief's brother. The name Matlhare is not known at all. My informant Eboletse Diloke (89 years old) believes that the first chiefs were: I Tawana II Maidu III Mochumi IV Maidu V Mochumi VI Ngake. The present headman Makgêthê, high ranking member of the chief's family, gives the first chiefs as follows: I Morolong - II Matlakala III Maabule - IV Ngake - V Maidu - VI Mochumi - VII Ngake. All agree that there was a chief I MAIDI who is the founder of the tribe. The tribal totem, thôlô (kudu), is the same as that of the baRolong. However, the Rolong totem tshipi (iron) is neither a Maidu nor a Tlhaping totem.

411 The old men relate a story of how the tribe broke away from the baRolong, which is the same as the story told by the other baTlhaping. When they did not trust the Rolong chief TAU and his son RATLOU, and suspected that they intended to kill the Maidu (the Tlhaping mention their own chief), their head Maidu adopted a ruse. For a long time he pretended to be deaf, but always sat in the kgotla of the Rolong chief to listen to what was

being planned. When he found out that something was afoot (probably RATLOU planned to attack the ba ga Maidu and the baTlhaping as well), he warned his men. They bound some calves to trees so that they would make a noise in the village and then all departed. They proceeded to a place by the name of Dinokaneng. The informants believe that this place is somewhere near Bothithong. The name Logore mentioned above may have been that of a brother of chief MAIDI but the bearer of the name was no chief himself. If we calculate the possible years of birth of the generations of chiefs, MAIDI must have been born some time between 1640 and 1675 which is about the same time when the Rolong chief RATLOU was born. Thus, according to years and the number of generations, MAIDI could have been a son of Tawana, brother of the Rolong chief TAU. Concerning the second chief II MATLAKALE nothing is known, except that he had the sons III MOTSUMI, IV MAABULE, and in the 3rd hut Matlapana. Tlhaodi and his son Mitsi may have lived during this period and probably were head-councillors of the chief. MOTSUMI was born some time between 1700 and 1725. It is believed that MOTSUMI and MAABULE, who was a regent for V NGAKE, both lived and died at Ga-Mopedi (west of Batlharos in Kuruman district).

412 Chief V NGAKE had the sons VIII PHÔLÔHÔLÔ, IX MAHUMAPELO, and Kgagane who were born between 1760 and 1780 and lived at Dithakong. During their time the Tlhaping chief VIII MOLEHABANGWE (born 1740/55) lived at Dithakong and used the present reserves in Kuruman as grazing areas. This means that the Tlhaping and ba ga Maidu stayed together, and that MOLEHABANGWE or his father MASWE was the superior chief in the same way as he was superior to the senior born Tlhaping sections, such as the boo Marumo and ba ga Pudukudu or boo Molehe. Kgagane was the father of Thuna Kgagane, the first headman of the Tlhaping area of the tribe.

413 VIII PHÔLÔHÔLÔ, born about 1760/75, succeeded his father V NGAKE and had the sons X MOTLHABANI, Ngake and Mophalane. IX MAHUMAPELO acted as regent on behalf of X MOTLHABANI, who was born about 1790/1800, regiment: Lelokwane at Dithakong. PHÔLÔHÔLÔ and MAHUMAPELO both died at DITHAKONG, the latter some years before 1870.

414 Chief X MOTLHABANI came to the present tribal land, Manthe, on the Manthe spruit. This

must have been during the rule of the Tlhaping chief MOTHIBI, who frequently changed his residence and for whom the Tlhaping country had become so large that he had to subdivide it amongst his brothers. This automatically led to a certain independence of the ba ga Maldi after 1840. They still maintain friendly relations with the senior descendants of Mothibi, such as Galešewe. When MOTLHABANI died in 1891 he was very old.

415 During MOTLHABANI's reign there was a famine and a section of the tribe moved away to the present Keang Reserve. In his or possibly before his time, a certain Kgobotle was the principal councillor of the chief. He was so important that some informants believe that he was a chief. They still remember that he allocated the clan areas (makgotla), helped the orphans, organized the tribal meetings, helped in many tribal affairs and declared war against the tribal section at Keang, under their local head Mere, for refusing to pay tax to the chief.

416 In about 1884, towards the end of MOTLHABANI's rule, war broke out between the ba ga Maldi and the baPhuduhutswana, which lasted for 3 years. It appears that seven horses belonging to the Saku family of the baPhuduhutswana had strayed into the Manthe area of the ba ga Maldi. Lost stock according to custom belongs to the chief and thus MOTLHABANI gave the horses to some of his relatives. One day visitors from the tribe in Taung, the Phuduhutswana, saw the horses and found that some were wounded. Chief MOTLHABANI was prepared to give the horses back to the owners and offered 7 oxen as damage because the horses were wounded. The Phuduhutswana chief, MANKUROANE, sent them back to show that he was not content with seven (Remark by the author: It is possible that the unlucky number seven was taken as an offence. The finger by which the number seven is indicated, is also used to point at witches). An offer of 10 and later of 20 oxen was turned down there by provoking the ba ga Maldi. Shortly before this (in 1884) General Warren ("Rra-di-gelasi") had visited the tribe at Manthe and had asked the chief to send somebody to supervise the area of Pokwane, the land of Galešewe in the southern part of Taung. MOTLHABANI sent his son KGANTLAPANE with some regiments to Pokwane. During this time both tribes, the ba ga Maldi and ba Phuduhutswana, prepared for war. MOTLHABANI ordered his regiments not to carry any rifles when out on tribal hunts and sent a message to this

effect to chief MANKUROANE, who had said that he wanted to discuss the state of affairs that evening at Leeuwpoot in order to arrive at a peaceful settlement. At the same time KGANTLAPANE's hunting regiments found MANKUROANE's regiments hiding between the rocks in the bed of the Harts River armed with rifles. The same evening they shot and killed eight Maldi people. The ba ga Maldi, with Galešewe's tribe and their Hottentot-neighbours as allies, attacked Taung, the population of which fled into the surrounding hills. Guerilla war was waged for three years. Unfortunately for the baPhuduhutswana they also were under fire from the Boers because of constant cattle thefts and they were thus compelled to sue for peace in 1887. It appears that the Boers and the British were on friendly terms with the ba ga Maldi.

417 The sons of chief X MOTLHABANI were: Sethapi in the 1st hut, Ratšwenye in the 2nd hut, KGANTLAPANE in the 3rd hut, and Tsite and Setlhogome in the 4th hut. The first two died before they could marry and KGANTLAPANE succeeded to the chieftainship. Tsite had a son Kesekwaile who became a clan headman.

418 The Location Commission of 1906/7 left the following notes about Ratshwene or Ratšwenye:

"Immediately after defeating Massouw, Gen. Joubert found it necessary to deal with several senior chiefs, among whom was Racuene, the son of Motlabane of the Tlhaping, who with about 300 followers resided near the border. R. was ordered to leave with his people for Bulpan in the Lichtenburg district, where a location would be beacons off for him. A location was accordingly surveyed for Racuene and his people at Bulpan in 1888, consisting of four and a half farms. Racuene and his followers settled there, but in 1891, he requested the Government to get him another location on the Massouw lands. In 1893 it was decided to move Racuene from Bulpan to lot 40 of the Massouw lands. With this he was not satisfied and went with his tribe into British Bechuanaland. At the beginning of July 1904 Racuene applied for permission to return to the Transvaal with his followers and to take up his residence in the Wolmaranstad District."

419 Chief MOTLHABANI died three years after the war with the Phuduhutswana (in 1890), having reached a very old age. His successor XI

KGANTLAPANE, born about 1835/45, regiment: Lohaha la ntšwe, had acted on his behalf for the previous four years. After the Langeberg Rebellion in 1896, in which the baTlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana chiefs were involved, KGANTLAPANE was recognised also as chief of the latter tribe by the British Government. The baPhuduhutšwana protested and recognition was consequently withdrawn. KGANTLAPANE had the following wives and sons:

- 1 Serume a moTlhaping from Mogopelo
 - a) MOŠOŠO, born 1870
 - b) Phôlôhôngô m
- 2 Tshiditso
 - a) Mahumapelo, died young, but had a son Olehile
 - b) Henry Sešaba Kgantlapane, once headman at the chief's place
- 3 Sebontshô
 - a) Makgêthê, present headman at Tweelingspan
 - b) Mashoboko, late clan headman at Kokomeng
- 4 Sebeta
 - a) George Gabanatlhake, present headman at Manthe
 - b) Mušo died.

KGANTLAPANE died on 7th May 1913.

420 He was succeeded by his son XII MOŠOŠO (MOSHOSH, old spelling) born about 1870, regiment Maletakgosi, who was recognised by the Government on 8.5.1913. MOŠOŠO had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Lekama, a member of the tribe
 - a Gabakgaotse f
 - 2 Gonnamang, married after the first wife had died as substitute
 - a WILLIAM NYÔKÔ m
 - b WAGGON MOLEKO m
- twins born 5.9.1902.

- c Mabule m, deseased
- d Boareng m
- 3 Segolagola
 - a Ntlhaeng m, deseased
 - b Bonetšwe m, born 1930
 - c Rasemose (=Erasmus) m

some further children died in youth. MOŠOŠO passed away in 1936. For particulars of his brother Phôlôhôngô see par. 443, (32-12.2).

421 MOŠOŠO was succeeded by his son XIII NYOKO WILLIAM KGANTLAPANE, whose regiment was Maakapula. He was officially appointed on 17th August 1936, and had the following wives and issue:

- 1 Monye, a member of the Digôja tribe from Taung
 - a LETSIÊ WALTER m, present chief
 - b Rosi Oarabile f
 - c Lerothodi m, died
- 2 Sina, was married after Monye had died
 - a Peloetlhetse Beauty f
 - b Glory Saitsane f
 - c Shakespeare Motlhabane m, born 1939
 - d Margaret Gakenosi f
 - e Silvia Nkagisang f.

NYÔKÔ died on 29 December 1942.

422 The heir WALTER was 12 years of age when his father died and did not assume the chieftainship until 1958. His paternal uncle and twin brother of his father, XIV MOLEKO WAGGON KGANTLAPANE, regiment: Maakantwa (1940), was appointed acting chief on 28th July 1943 and acted until 4th May 1958, when he became completely blind. He has the following wives and issue:

- 1 Babopang

- a Tlhoilwe f
- b Mabosigo f
- c Catherine Matswanakano f died
- d Maime m died

2 Gasimelwe

no issue.

While MOLEKO was in the hospital from 1 Oct. to 1 Nov. 1957, Ben Kgantlapane, the headman of Molelema, acted on his behalf. MOLEKO is still living.

423 The present chief XV LETSIÊ WALTER MOTLHABANI lived for many years in Alexandra Township Johannesburg, and returned home in March 1957. He married Junia Matlakala Thagane, who came from his mother's family in Bloemfontein, and has the following children:

- a) Monye Patricia, a girl, was born on 6th November 1959
- b) Nyôkô (second) Charles m, born 12 Nov. 1961

c) Naledi Maureen f, born 17 Aug. 1963.

424 The praise poem or tribal seboko, called Kgatsele of the ba ga Maidi goes as follows:

(according to Chief WALTER LETSIÊ MOTLHABANE and George K. Kgantlapane)

bagaMaidi a Kgatsele
 baTlapa ka lobese
 baTsaya tlhowa ba itshogona
 ba mogatla a kgomo ba ga Segailêlê
 ka Keledi a Tlhapi a ikitletse
 a itsa motse wa bo gohalala,
 motse ga se setsanmeko Motlhaping
 o tšwara ke Mosimane wa moroba yo o
 marudi a kana ka gago
 yo o šorilekima yo oreng a bua

Boêla diKhunwana ga se tsagaeno
 ga di a go lema
 tsa ga Mohakana
 boo ra Motšatša moga kalêla batho
 moreuthunya dibotlhoko
 mokgothu go dile ga re
 sa inêêla ope Mochwana.

Regiments:

425 The names and dates of the tribal regiments (mepatho) are similar to those of the neighbouring baTlhaping, although there are deviations.

Regiment:	Leader:	Date:
Malokwane	Chief MOTLHABANI	about 1920
?		
Majapôô	Tiêgô	1857/60
?		
Majakgomo	Sethapi	1870/73
Lohaha I	?	?
Lohaha wa ntšê II	Chief KGANTLAPANE	about 1877
Majatau	Ratšwenye, son of Motlhabani	about 1880
Mapelesa	Tshite, do.	1885
Mahenyakgosi	Setlhogome	c. 1887
Maletakgosi	Chief MOŠÔŠÔ	1890
Maakakgosi	Phôlôhôlô brother of Mošôšô	1904
Maakathata	Sešaba Henry, do.	1918
Maakapula	Chief NYOKO	1925
Maakakgang	MOLEKO, his brother	1940

Regiment:	Leader:	Date:
Maakantwa	same	1941
Mashêla	Chief WALTER LETSIÊ	1944
Maletalakgosi	Erasmus Rasemose Motlhabani	1948
Mapêgakgosi	Job Mašoboka Kgantlapane	1958
Manesapula	Boirwang Kgantlapane	1962

The women's regiments have the same name. The long intervals between the regiments show that lengthy periods of drought and unsufficient harvests intervened.

P o l i t i c a l o r g a n i s a t i o n :

426 The tribe is composed of the following clans with their hereditary clan heads:

Clan	Sub-clan (makgotla)	Clan head
I baKgosing		
A	Ngake	the Chief himself
B	Sengwedi	Frank K.Sengwedi, recognised headman
C	Pitšo	Kana Lehihi
	including boo RaMohitlhe	
D	Moletasope	Matlhwaahêla Setuti
E	Mongala	Habisi Mongwaketse
F	Matlaopane	Pakô Gaorutwe (Makape Serai died)
G	Marumaalala	Piet Kgosiayagae
II Mogamisi (Bagamisi)		
A	boo RaMere	Gaotlhaelwe Mere
B	boo Kobua	Botsang Motsitsi

C boo Ngotwana Raukweng Christoffel
Bokgwatile

Families from various tribes are intermixed with the mentioned clans, such as

Mamathêbê (South Sotho),

"Matebele" (Xhosa)

baHurutshe

baKgatla ba ga Manaana

baTaung

baTlôkwa.

427 The tribe is a member of the Bantu Authorities system, established by Government Notice No. 444 dd. 29.3.1957. The number of councillors is fixed at 8 to 14. The Bantu Authority council is composed of the following councillors:

- 1 Frank Sengwedi, recognised headman
- 2 Ben Kgantlapane, recognised headman
- 3 Ezekiel Kgantlapane (then acting for Makgêthê), recognised headman
- 4 George G. Kgantlapane, recognised headman and chief's deputy.
- 5 Saul Sengwedi
- 6 Nkwe Sengwedi
- 7 Loeto Sengwedi
- 8 Tokwe Segopišo
- 9 Bethuel Motšumi
- 10 Joel Sethiba
- 11 Daniel Montshiwagae
- 12 George Ntlhoisang Kgantlapane.

428 During the time of acting Chief MOLEKO, the chief had an executive council or lekgotla of 7 members to assist him in the preliminary discussion of tribal matters and court cases. Almost

all of them have died. One of the councillors Dilohe, who is 89 years old (in 1960), has a special knowledge of tribal custom and history. Because the tribe has no council of clan headman, all matters are directly referred from the executive council to public meetings.

429 All other matters of general interest, such as social customs, beliefs, churches, schools, material culture, agriculture etc., are dealt with in the chapters of the general introduction.

430 I visited the tribe at Manthe several times in January and March 1960 and 1963, and obtained the material from the chief, his headman and councillors and from old people.

LOCAL HEADMAN FOR THE MANTHE LOCATION.

431 Chief WALTER MOTLHABANI is chief over 4 sub areas each of which is supervised by a government appointed headman. For the Manthe area proper in which the chief resides, the local headman is at present GEORGE GABANATLHAKKE KGANTLAPANE, born 1901 education: school standard IV, member of the Independent Congregational Church. He was appointed by the Government on 1st November, 1949, being subordinate to the jurisdiction of the chief at Manthe.

432 The first local headman at Manthe (A) was TSONKANE MAKURE, who was in office before 1902. It appears that he was not recognised by the Government. He had the two sons (twins:)

- a) Semašwe Frank Makure, born in 1902
- b) Ramasesane Moses Makure.

The headman died in 1927.

433 The second headman (B) was HENRY SETŠHABA KGANTLAPANE, born before 1886, regiment: Maakathata, appointed by the Government on 1st April 1927. Henry was a son of the second wife of Chief XI KGANTLAPANE, The sons of KGANTLAPANE are given in par. 419.

HENRY died on 14th May 1942.

434 The next headman, (C) JOHN PHOLOANE MOSINGI, merely an elected and Government headman, was appointed on 1st July 1942 and remained in office until his death on 22nd June 1944. the next headman (D) JOHANNES SERETSE was also an elected headman, appointed on 1st April 1945 and remaining in office until his death in 1949.

435 The successor and present headman (E) GEORGE KGANTLAPANE once again a member of the chief's family, is a son of the fourth hut of chief KGANTLAPANE (cf. par. 419). He was born in 1901 and has the following wives and issue:

1 Mariam Morwenyane

- a Kgosietsile William, m born in 1931 in Klerksdorp
- b Pitšo Piet m

c-f died in youth

2 Morwanyane Mary

a Kedibone f

b Taola m deceased

c Kgantlapane m born 1959

3 Gabaemi

a Gokatweng f

b Motswasele Abel m born 1946.

436 I visited the headman in July 1960.

d i s t r i c t:

437 Taung, Cape Province

Name of T r i b e:

438 ba ga Maidi, totem, thôlô (kudu)

Present h e a d m a n:

439 BENJAMIN MOGONONO KGANTLAPANE, born 1909, was appointed headman by the Government on 1st January 1953, being sub-ordinate to the jurisdiction of Chief WALTER LETSIË MOTLHABANI. Place of residence: Molelema.

L a n d and strenght of P o p u l a t i o n:

440 Molelema is in the southern part of the tribal land. The headman's area does not include Kokoming and Koppie Enkel. The village is on the road from Manthe to Koppie Enkel, 22 miles from the Magistrate's Office. The altitude is slightly above 4000 ft. above sea level. For the rainfall see the Taung area paragraph 25. The average annual rainfall is about 17 inches.

441 There are four villages in the headman's area: Molelema in the east, Sedukung in the western part, Longaneng north-east of Sedukung, and Mothanthanyane on the western boundary of the tribal area extending into the Magogong area of the ba Phuduhutswana.

442 The census of 1951 did not record the population of the headman's area separately. In 1957 the headman had 565 taxpayers. I estimate the population under the headman at present to be 2900 plus about 1400 absent workers, i.e. a total of 4300.

H i s t o r y:

443 The first headman for the Molelema area of the tribal land was (A) PHOLÔHÔLÔ, a son of chief XI KGANTLAPANE of the first hut and brother of chief XI MOSÔSÔ. cf. par. 419. He was born in 1874 and his regiment was Maakakgosi (1904). He had the following wives and issue:

1 Bainei Pauline, married in 1906

a Motlhabane m deceased

- b Gate f
- c BEN MOGONONO m, the present headman
- d Mbontsang f
- e Mosadiwamarope f deceased
- f Maphatšane f
- f Selekgeng m living
- h Matau f

2 Tuêlô

- a Bailusi Benjamin m born 1910
- b Seitsiwe f deceased
- c Sepalamo f deceased
- d Moselaatšhe f
- e Montshiwa Willie m living
- f Keelešelang m deceased
- g Moholoanyane m

3 Ntlongwe

- a Sedihiile f
- b Setlêlang f
- c Mošôšô m born 1925
- d Gaoagiwe m
- e Moatlhudiemang m
- f Serêka f
- g Keitebetse f
- h Gokolahantšwe f
- i Keipiditse m
- j Keatweng m

Phôlôhônô died on 20 th December 1952.

444 The second headman was his son and present headman (B) BEN MOGONONO. Cf. par. 439. He married Belinah Sejô and has the following children by her:

- a Letlhogile Raymond m, born 1933
- b Galelemogwe Cecilia f
- c Phôlôhônô Walter m born 1938.

P o l i t i c a l o r g a n i s a t i o n :

445 The political organisation is centred at the chief's place. In the headman's area parts of the following clans: 1) Sengwedi, 2) the boo Ra-Mohitlhe, a subclan of the ba Pitsô, both being royal clans.

446 The headman is a member of the chief's council and is himself assisted by 1) Ramagageng Right Seêpamere and 2) Itlhabaneng Mac Sekgoetšô in the discussion of local affairs. For further particulars see the general introduction.

447 I visited the headman in January 1960.

D i s t r i c t :

448 Taung, Cape Province.

N a m e o f T r i b e :

449 BaTlhaping ba ga Maidi or BagaMaidi, totem:
Thôlô (Kudu).

P r e s e n t H e a d m a n :

450 EZEKIEL MANTOLONG KGANTLAPANE, born 1920, was appointed Government Headman on 1st July 1961, acting for his aged father. He is subordinate to the jurisdiction of Chief WALTER MOTLHABANI.

Residence: Matseng on the farm Tweelingspan.

L a n d a n d s t r e n g t h o f P o p u l a t i o n :

451 Matseng is situated in the easternmost part of the district of Taung, about 22 miles from Taung. The headman's area comprises the farms Tweelingspan (3101 morgen 136 rds.), Panmure (4195 morgen 111 rds.) and Kokoming (3081 morgen 384 rds.) in the Scheduled Native Area of the Taung Native Reserve and the farm Koppie Enkel (3889 morgen 238 rds.) in Released Area no. 9. There are the following villages in the headman's area: Matseng on Tweelingspan, Mmamutle on Panmure and Kokoming (not Kokoming) on the farm with the same name. Formerly there was a village Gaumakwe on the farm Koppie Enkel. The altitude of the area is over 4000 feet above sea level and the average annual rainfall is between 16 and 17 inches. There is a dam in the eastern corner of Kokoming. The strength of the population is given in par. 401.

H i s t o r y :

452 The first headman for this eastern part of the tribal land is the headman MAKGÊTHÊ KGANTLAPANE, who is a son in the third hut of chief XI KGANTLAPANE MAKGÊTHÊ, was born in 1873. He had school education to standard VI and was appointed headman on 4 Jan. 1912. He married Grace Gadikgatle and has the following issue by her:

- a Samuel Matlhakale m died in 1944
- b Joseph Kebalepile m born 1910, died 1960
- c Flora Thêkôeng f

- d Evening Kegomoditšwe f
- e Lili Kereng f
- f Esekiel Mantolong m born 1920, my informant
- g Nelly Keiteng f
- h Rosy Kesenyang f
- i Gladys Kikantsê mang f.

MAKGÊTHÊ retired on 30.6.1961 because of old age and died on 23.7.1963. The son Esekiel, who is the eldest son, acted as headman for his father since 1961. Esekiel is educated to school standard III and is a member of the independent Congregational Church. He married Mita Entshang, who come from Schweizer Reneke and has the following children by her:

- a) Gadikgatthe Emily f born 1957
- b) Motlalepula Maria f born 1961
- c) Kenewang Maria f born 1961
- d) Makgêthê William m 1963

P o l i t i c a l O r g a n i s a t i o n :

453 In the headman's area, there is the Ngake clan of the ba ga Maidi as well as some baSotho, Xhosa and socalled "Matebele" the origin of whom is unknown. The headman has six advisers to discuss local affairs.

454 I visited the Headman in July 1960.

D i s t r i c t:

455 Taung, C.P.

T r i b e:

456 ba ga Maidi, totem: thôlô (kudu).

Present h e a d m a n:

457 MORWA CHRISTOPHER SENWEDI, born 14.11.1930, was officially appointed Headman on 1st October 1961, being subordinate to the jurisdiction of chief WALTER LETSIÊ MOTLHABANI. Place of residence: Tlapeng.

L a n d and numbers of P o p u l a t i o n:

458 The Tlapeng area is the smallest of the four tribal areas. It is situated in the north-eastern corner of the district. The average annual rainfall is about 17 inches. There are three villages in the headman's area: Tlapeng, Modutung in the western corner and Dipuding in the south-eastern corner.

459 The village Tlapeng is about 16 miles from the Magistrate's office by road. It is situated on the road to Schweizer Reneke.

460 The 1951 census recorded a population of 1243 in the Headman's area. 166 Taxpayers were registered in 1957 for this area which means that many of the headman's followers were registered elsewhere. I estimate the present population of the headman's area to be about 2000, including absent workers.

Skeleton g e n e a l o g y of chiefs:

461 The headmen of this area are indicated in the chief's genealogy par. 405.

H i s t o r y:

462 The first headman for the Tlapeng area was (A) XII MOŠOŠO before he became chief, i.e. from about 1900 to 1913. He was born about 1870, regiment: Maletakgosi. For particulars of his genealogy see par. 405.

463 The second headman for Tlapeng was (B) THUNA KGAGANE, who was a son of Kgagane and grandson of Chief V NGAKE. He served as Government headman for many years and died on 5th February 1939.

464 He was succeeded by headman (C) FRANK KERETETSE SENWEDI, born in 1885, regiment: Leakapula (1925), appointed on 9 March 1939. FRANK married Mamokale Sedimo and has the following children by her:

- a Seduku m born 1925 deceased
- b Puleng Sannie f
- c Morwa Christopher m born 1930
- d Pheko Taylor m
- e Moapitšo Joseph m
- f Manaka Joseph m
- g Seepapitšo m deceased
- h Modisagarekwe John m
- i Keitlhetse f deceased
- j Boitumêlô Daniel m.

Senwedi is the second subclan of the royal clan. FRANK is descended from Senwedi as follows:

```

Senwedi
|
Ramorolong
|
Seraseng
|
Frank Senwedi.
|

```

FRANK SENWEDI retired on 30.9.1961 and died on the 13. March 1962.

465 His eldest living son (D) MORWA CHRISTOPHER SENWEDI succeeded (cf. par. 464). MORWA has standard IV education. He married Mammale Lydia who has the following children:

- a) Tshadi f born 1956
- b) Mokgethisi m
- c) Gaompotse m
- d) Bodumele Lucas m

e) Nkagisang Gert m

f) Moagiemang Senwedi m (died)

P o l i t i c a l O r g a n i s a t i o n :

466 The political organisation is centred at the chiefs place, although the Senwedi subclan lives at Tlapeng. There are also members of other clans such as Mogabisi, Ngotwana and baTaung (South Sotho).

467 The headman is a member of the chief's council at Manthe. He has two advisers to deal with local affairs. They are: 1) Malôba White Loba and 2) Mosimanewamakgoa Johannes Pušô.

468 I visited the headman in January 1960 and obtained the above material from himself and his advisers.

LOWER MAJEAKGORO

D i s t r i c t :

469 District of Taung, Cape Province, formerly British Bechuanaland.

T r i b e :

470 The different tribes, in order of numerical strength are: baRolong of the clans: Modiboa, Morakile, boo Thaba, boo Seleka, Rakgôrô; baHurutshe boo Manyane, and few baTshweng; baTlhaping of the clans: Seatlôlô, boo Moduana, few бага Molehe and Phuduhutšwana (2 families); baTlhaping бага Maidi; baKwena of Sechele.

P r e s e n t H e a d m a n :

471 LECHUTE ELIAS PAMPIER, born in 1887, no regiment, member of the Berlin Lutheran Mission Church, is a moRolong boo Seleka of the Modiboa clan. He was officially appointed as independent headman on 1st March 1933. Since he became head of the Majeakgoro Tribal Authority, civil and criminal jurisdiction have been conferred on him, the proclamation being dated 28th February 1958.

L a n g u a g e :

472 Tlhaping dialect of seTswana.

L a n d a n d s t r e n g t h o f P o p u l a t i o n :

473 Lower Majeakgoro is the northernmost of the locations previously included in the Barkly West district. It stretches about 10 miles from east to west and for about 4 miles from north to south. Originally Lower and Upper Majeakgoro were one area being 18,672 morgen in extent. Lower Majeakgoro comprises the following farms:

N.W. 27	3,408 morgen	
N.W. 28	2,647 morgen	173 sq. rds.
N.W. 29	4,277 morgen	414 sq. rds.
Total	10,332 morgen	587 sq. rds.

474 The correct spelling of the place name is Majeakgoro (stones of a reef) and not Mayeakgoro. In this area there are many limestone outcrops especially on the hills to the west and in the new residential area. There is only one village in the Location, which is called Pampierstat or

Majeakgoro. The village in Upper Majeakgoro bears the name, of Ntšelentlhane. Pampierstat was recently moved to a new locality in the centre of the Location, in order to provide a suitable system of grazing camps.

475 The altitude of the Majeakgoro Location varies from 4000 ft. above sea level along the western boundary of the location, which is the altitude of the natural plateau around Taung district to 3500 in the valley of the Harts River. The description of "Upper" and "Lower" majeakgoro is no longer apt. The whole area known as Majeakgoro slopes from west to east and not from south to north. Upper Majeakgoro was previously on the western slope while lower Majeakgoro was in the valley to the east. In order to give both areas access to the Harts river the boundary was redrawn from west to east thereby giving both locations an upper and a lower part. Strictly speaking one should now refer to Pampierstat as Lower Majeakgoro and to Nchelentlhane (new orthography: Ntšelentlhane) as Upper Majeakgoro. The average annual rainfall is about 17 inches.

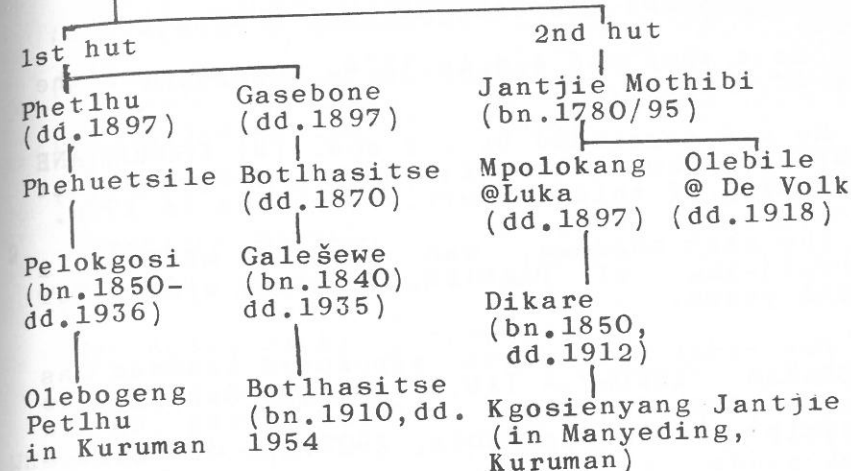
476 The Census of 1951 recorded a population of 997 (444 m, 553 f.) for Lower Majeakgoro. In 1957 292 taxpayers were registered under the headman. The Majeakgoro Tribal Authority has a total of 917 taxpayers. I estimate the present population to be about 1700 including 500 absent workers.

H i s t o r y :

477 The Location has a mixed population consisting mainly of baRolong, baHurutshe and others, and with a minority of baTlhaping. Many persons who worked in the diamond diggings in the days gone by, found a home in the Locations of the former Barkly West district. It appears that towards the middle of last century GASEBONE was the chief over the whole of Majeakgoro being succeeded until the Langeberg Rebellion (1897), by chief GALESEWE. The Locations further south belonged to chief JANTJIE MOTHIBI.

478 The genealogy of the former chiefs (capital letters) is as follow:

VIII MOLEHABANGWE (bn.1740/55, died 1812)
IX MOTHIBI (bn.1770/5, died 1836/8) Molale IXMAHURA
chiefs at Taung



Phetlhu and Gasebone took part in the Langeberg Rebellion. Phetlhu was sentenced to death for murdering a European official and Gasebone was imprisoned from 1897 to 1903. Gasebone and his grandson Galešewe lived at Phokwane. The area was taken away from him because of the Langeberg Rebellion.

479 The family of Botlhasitse (second) live in Modutung area of Magogong under the chief of Taung. Botlhasitse had endeavoured to secure the restoration of the chieftainship. The Government offered him the farm Roodepoort in Taung in 1938 and Trust farms in Kuruman in 1942, but he refused the offer. Since his death, in 1958 (?), his followers have evinced no further interest in the chieftainship. Phetlhu's descendants disputed Galešewe's rights to the chieftainship. Phehuetsile and Olebogeng spent most of their lives in diamond diggings in Barkly West, OLEBOGENG PETLHU was offered the chieftainship over the Tlhaping Reserve and Trust farms in the district of Kuruman in 1944. (His history is given in "The Tribes of Kuruman District" Ethnological Publication No. 49 paras.365-389).

480 BOTLHASITSE, who lived at Phokwane, appointed the grandfather of the present headman, (A) PAMPIER LETSHUTE, as first headman of Majeakgoro. PAMPIER, was one of the early settlers in the area arriving before 1870. He was a moRolong from Thabanchu and had three sons:

- (a) Tokonyane
- (b) Rrakhee Andries
- (c) KGOMONYANE JAN PAMPIER.

He died at a very old age in 1874, the year of the eclipse of the sun.

481 He was succeeded by his son, (B) KGOMONYANE JAN PAMPIER, who relinquished the headmanship at the beginning of this century. He died in 1926.

482 The next headman, was (C) JUEL MENTOR, a relative-in-law of PAMPIER, holding office for about 2-3 years.

483 The first Government appointed headman was (D) ABRAHAM "LEEUEW" = TAU, a South-Sotho, who was headman for 3-4 years before giving up the headmanship on 30th September, 1907. He died in 1930.

484 The next headman was (E) JOHANNES CHUBISI, a moTlhaping of the ba ga Maidi section. He had come from Motšorogwane, now called New Lands, in the Dikgatlong area (junction of Vaal and Harts). He died on 22nd May, 1910. He was succeeded by his son (F) MOAGISI CHUBISI, appointed headman on 23rd May, 1910. This headman died on 4th September, 1922.

485 The next headman chosen by the Government, was (G) JAN TAU = "LEEUEW", a moRolong boo Thaba from Thabanchu. He was succeeded by his brother, (H) PIET TAU = "LEEUEW", officially appointed on 7th June, 1923. This headman died on 4th Dec. 1932.

486 The present headman succeeded to the office on 1st March, 1923, (I) ELIAS PAMPIER is the son of Rrakhee Andries, mentioned above as son of headman (A) PAMPIER. Rrakhee was not a headman having proceeded to Bulawayo where he took part in a war. Before leaving, he had married Tshainyane and had had two sons by her:

- (a) ELIAS PAMPIER
- (b) Gaboipelwe Abraham who lives at Kimberley.

In Rhodesia he married a second wife, a moShona.

487 ELIAS PAMPIER has the following wives and issue:

1 Moretiimang Jemaima, a moRolong of Thabanchu who died in 1921

- (a) Selelo Rebecca f
- (b) Mosele m deceased
- (c) Booitjie m deceased
- (d) Mosadiwahika f deceased
- (e) Magare m deceased

2 Mmakepile Martha, a moRolong boo Rratshidi

- (a) Mmatiki f
- (b) Kgakgamatšô m born 1928
- (c) Dinkô ("Chôlô") m

When the headman came to Majeakgoro in 1931, his wife preferred to remain in Mafeking where she is still living.

3 Sannie Mohule, a moTshweng

- (a) Tshainyane f deceased.

P o l i t i c a l O r g a n i s a t i o n :

488 The tribal areas under headmen in the old Barkley West reserves now forming part of the Taung district with the possible exception of Majeakgoro, previously formed a unit under one chief. They are now loosely organised sections. Since 1958 Lower and Upper Majeakgoro, Sekging and Seoding have been grouped together in the Majeakgoro Tribal Authority. The locations of the headmen of Mamutla, Driefontein or Mmadipelesa, and Shaleng were at the same time grouped under the Mamutla Tribal Authority. Majeng had resisted all efforts towards co-operation. The natural chief for all these locations is KGOSIENEWANG JANTJIE who is now official headman, at Manyeding in the Kuruman district.

489 The Majeakgoro Tribal Authority was established by Government Notice No.317 dated 28th February, 1958. The area of this Authority is described as follows: "From a point on the boundary common to the Taung and Warrenton Districts at the south-easterly beacon common to the farm Witpan (T.A.V.F.1.9) and Majeakgoro Location; thence in a general southerly direction along the boundary common to the Taung and Warrenton Districts to the beacon common to the farm Anthorn

N.W. 23 (G.W.10.15) and Seeding Location on the bank of the Harts River; thence in a north-westerly direction along the boundary common to Seeding Location and the farm Anthorn N.W. 23, Seeding Location and the farm N.W. 33 (B.A.W.10.9) to the beacon common to Seeding Location, the farm N.W.33, N.W.41 (G.W.18.18) and Chosen Farm N.W.40 (G.W.10.18); thence in a generally northerly direction along the boundary common to Seeding Location and Chosen Farm N.W.40, Sekging Location and farm N.W. 39 (G.W.8.51), Sekging Location and the farm N.W. 38 (G.W.8.48), Majeakgoro Location and the farm N.W. 37 (G.W. 19.40) and Majeakgoro Location and the farm Dingly Dell N.W.36 (G.W.24.8 to the beacon common to the Majeakgoro Location, the farm Dingly Dell N.W. 36 on the Southern Boundary of Released Area No.8 (Thoming TAV. 1.15); thence in a general south-easterly direction along the boundary common to the Majeakgoro Location and Released Area No.8 (Thoming TAV. 1.15), Majeakgoro Location and the farm Witpan (TAV. 1. 15), Majeakgoro Location and the farm Witpan (TAV.F.1.9 to the point of commencement.

490 The number of councillors is laid down as a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 18, divided as far as practically equal between locations.

491 The head of the Majeakgoro Tribal Authority is headman Elias Pampier of Lower Majeakgoro location. The councillors are (appointed 1.Sept. 1962) as follows:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| 1) headman Elias Pampier | Pampierstat. |
| 2) Sam Bethanie | " |
| 3) Piet Mooketsi | " |
| 4) headman John Matšwe | Upper Majeakgoro |
| 5) Jackson Makodi | Upper Majeakgoro |
| 6) Henry Ntsekang | " |
| 7) headman John Sehêmo | Sekging |
| 8) Stoffel Ntshekang | " |
| 9) Samson Monnamme | " |
| 10) headman Daniel Babuseng | Seeding |
| 11) Phillip Mmusi | " |
| 12) Sam Kgatlhane | " |

492 Before the establishment of a Tribal Authority, the headman had 4 advisers to assist him in managing the affairs of the location. Except for Sam Bethanie, they were not nominated as councillors for the Tribal Authority. The Majeakgoro Tribal Authority has a levy of 10s. p.a. for the years 1959 to 1963 (Proclamation No. 212 of 1958).

493 The more important tribal groups have their own sub- or clan headmen:

- | | |
|------------|----------------------------|
| boRolong | head Elias Pampier himself |
| baHurutshe | head Lorathu Matlola |
| bagaMaidi | head Gôpane |
| baKwena | head Modise |
| baTlhaping | head ? |

494 For further particulars, e.g. about schools, churches, land etc., see the general introduction.

495 I visited the tribe in April 1960 and obtained the above material from departmental files, from the headman himself and from some of his councillors.

D i s t r i c t :

496 Taung, Cape Province, in former British Bechuanaland.

T r i b e :

497 baTlhaping ba ga Molehe and ba ga Phuduhutšwana, baRolong and South-Sotho

Present H e a d m a n :

498 HENRY MALESHANE NTSHÊKANG, born 1902, was appointed as Government headman on 12 October 1966. His Location forms part of the Majeakgoro Communal Authority.

Residence: Ntšhêlentlhane or Upper Majeakgoro.

L a n g u a g e :

499 Southern dialect of seTswana.

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n :

500 Upper Majeakgoro is now the southern half of the Majeakgoro area, which formed a single unit in the last century. There is only one village in Upper Majeakgoro Location, namely Nchelentlhane (official writing: Ntšhelentlhane), which means pointed stones. It is situated a few miles south-west of Pampierstat, from which it is separated by some hills. Altitude and rainfall are the same as for Pampierstat mentioned in par. 475. A grazing area to the west of the village is called Leuputsane, being named after a fountain.

501 Upper Majeakgoro is 7,339 morgen in extent and comprises the following farms:

N.W. No. 26	3,674 morgen 145 sq. roods
N.W. No. 30	<u>3,664 morgen 528 sq. roods</u>
Total	7,339 morgen 73 sq. roods

The farm N.W. No. 25 does not belong to this Location as said in departemental records.

502 The Census of 1951 gives a population of 703 (310 m. 393 fem.) for the area. In 1957, 235 taxpayers were registered under the headman. I estimate the present total population of the Location to be about 1,100 to 1,200 including about 350 absent workers.

History:

503 In the last century the locations of Upper and Lower Majeakgoro were a single unit under one headman. Before 1911 this Location was supervised from Pampierstat.

504 The first headman, (A) MALESWANE NTSÊKANG, a moTlhaping wa ga Phuduhutšwana, was appointed by the Government on 1st November, 1911. The headman was dismissed on 15th March, 1935.

505 The headman (B) JOHANNES RAMODISANE MATŠWE, born 1884, succeeded to the office on 1st October, 1935. He has the following wives and issue:

1 Mary, a Southern-Sotho of the baTaung tribe

- (a) Makoma f died
- (b) Tina f
- (c) Madikatane f died
- (d) Mosiwa f
- (e) Nkô m born 1918
- (f) Kulane f.

2 Dina, married after the first wife had died, divorced, had no children.

3 Mmêlê, a moRolong from Phitsane
no issue.

The headman died on 8th December 1962.

506 The neighbouring headman, ELIAS PAMPIER, (cf. paras. 471, 487, 491) also acted for this Location for four years, appointed on 15th Dec. 1962. The inhabitants of the Location however, wished to have their own headman. A grandson of the first headman, (C) HENRY MALESHANE NTSÊKANG, born 1902, education Stand. II, was appointed by the Government on 12. Oct. 1966. His grandfather MALESHANE NTSEKANG had the following three sons by his first wife: Piet Simakoko, who did not succeed because he was blind and who died in 1956, Samuel and Ishmail who both died long ago. Piet had the sons HENRY and Nelson who has again three sons. HENRY married Ruth Moaba, and has the following children by her:

- a Herod Molebatsi m born 1933
- b Edwin Moheloeng m born 1939
- c Herbert Kesaabaka m born 1941
- d Rosie f
- e Katie f
- f Elizabeth f
- g Magret f.

Political organisation:

507 The small tribal groups of this Location have their own sub- or clanheadmen:

baTlhaping ba ga Molehe, head: Motimêla

baTlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana, head: Modito

baRolong boo Mabula, head: Kabêlô

South Sotho, head?

Upper Majeakgoro forms part of the Majeakgoro Tribal Authority (Proclamation No. 317 of 1958) under the chairmanship of headman Elias Pampier. For the tribal members on the Tribal Authority council see par. 491.

508 For further particulars, e.g. schools, churches, agriculture etc. see the general introduction. I visited Majeakgoro in April, 1960.

D i s t r i c t:

509 Taung, Cape Province, former British Bechuanaland.

T r i b e:

510 baTlhaping ba Phuduhutšwana and few ba ga Molehe, baRolong, baHurutshe and baTshweng. The tribes of the Barkly West Reserves are No.32-07 in "The Preliminary Survey of the Bantu tribes of S.A." by Dr. N.J. van Warmelo.

Present H e a d m a n:

511 STOFFEL NTSHÊKANG SEHÊMÔ was appointed acting headman on 1.6.1961. (cf. par. 521)

Residence: Sekging.

L a n g u a g e:

512 Tlhaping dialect of seTswana.

L a n d and strength of P o p u l a t i o n:

513 The Sekging Location is situated between Majeakgoro and the road from Jan Kempdorp to Kuruman. The residential area is in the centre of the Location which comprises two farms: N.W.25 and N.W.31. It is 7,511 morgen 27 sq. rds. in extent.

514 Sekging is the only village in the location. Further placenames are:

Mosômasêkgwa, a fountain and grazing south-west of Sekging,
Kanye, grazing area in a northerly direction from Sekging,
Matlapana(neng), a grazing area south of Sekging.

The altitude varies from 4,000 feet, above sea level on the western boundary to below 3,500 feet in the valley of the Harts River.

515 The Census of 1951 recorded a population of 431 (209 m, 222f.) for the area. In 1957, 143 taxpayers were registered for Sekging, while for both Locations, Sekging and Seoding, under headman Sehêmo, 390 taxpayers were registered. I estimate the population of Sekging to be about 900 including 400 absent workers.

H i s t o r y:

516 In the last century from approximately 1835

until the district boundaries were proclaimed in 1899, the Sekging Location was in charge of chief Jantjie Mothibi and his son Luka.

517 The first headman, (A) ANDRIES MAITATWE MOLATOMME, a moTlhaping ba ga Maidi, was chosen by the Government and appointed on 11th August, 1900. He had no authority over his people because they were not consulted about the appointment of a headman. The headman also allowed unauthorised ingress of strangers and gave them ploughing land in his area, something which he considered he was entitled to do under Native Custom. The misunderstanding with the administration and the disregard of Bantu legal customs led to the dismissal of the headman on 20th May, 1906.

518 The next headman was the father of the present headman, (B) KOKI SEHÊMÔ, appointed by the Government on 21st May, 1906. He was a moTlhaping ba ga Molehe, born 1860, regiment: Majapôô. He had the following wives and sons:

1 Gaboileng, a moTlhaping ba ga Maidi

(a) Mosimanekgosi m present headman

(b) Sehêmô Sehêmô m died

2 Malekôpa, a moRolong

(a) Ohalotse Willy m, lives in Johannesburg.

There was no co-operation between the headman and the then Superintendent of Natives with the result that the headman was dismissed on 3rd April, 1925. While the matter was still being investigated by the Department (C) KOROSANI acted as headman until 24th July, 1925.

519 The next headman, (D) SELEHITŠWE TAU, a moTlhaping ba ga Maidi, was again chosen by the Government and appointed on 25th July, 1925. The headman terminated his services because of ill-health and old age on 1st May, 1935.

520 The Headman (E) ISAAK MOSIMANEKGOSI SEHÊMÔ, born 1882, regiment: Maakakgosi, appointed on 1st October, 1935, succeeded to the office. From 7th July, 1952 to 1.7.1962 he had also been official headman of the Seoding location. Both locations form part of the Majeakgoro Tribal Authority of which headman ELIAS PAMPIER is the chairman. He is a moTlhaping ba ga Molehe. His wives and issue are as follows:

1 Nnanna Francina, a moHurutshe who died after 1920

(a) Motêkgê John, m born 1910, working at Jan Kempdorp.

(b) Mosêsane David, m away in town somewhere

2 Podile Mmalala, a moTsatsing, married after the first wife had died

(a) Lala f

(b) Phôlôhônô James m lives in Johannesburg

(c) Boinyane Joseph m lives in Johannesburg

(d) Kenalemang f died

3 Dorothea Chilelelo, a moHurutshe married in 1945

(a) Gaebalwe f

(b) f died in youth.

ISAAK, M. SEHÊMÔ died on 5th February, 1961.

521 (F) STOFFEL NTSHÊKANG SEHÊMÔ was appointed acting headman on 1.6.1961. He is probably ruling for the eldest son of the late headman, JOHN MOTÊKGÊ SEHÊMÔ, born 1910, had no education and is working in Jan Kempdorp. JOHN has five children, who are married.

P o l i t i c a l o r g a n i s a t i o n :

522 There are no sub-headman or clan headmen under the headman, because the large majority of the inhabitants of the location are ba ga Phuduhutšwana. All the other sections are so few in number that they cannot be organised under sub-heads.

523 Sekging forms part of the Majeakgoro Tribal Authority under the chairmanship of headman Elias Pampier.

524 At present, headman Sehêmô is also the headman of the Seoding Location. This may be a temporary arrangement until such time as a suitable headman can be found for this area. The Seoding location is described separately below.

525 I visited the headman in April, 1960 and obtained the above material from departmental files, from the headman and some old men.

D i s t r i c t:

526 Taung, Cape Province.

T r i b e:

527 Seoding location has a mixed population, consisting, according to strength of numbers, of: baKgatlā ba ga Manaana, baHurutshe, baNgwaketse and few baTlhaping ba ga Molehe, ba ga Phuduhutswana and ba ga Maidi.

Present H e a d m a n:

528 GALOTLHOMELWE NATHANIEL BABUSENG, born 1896, was officially appointed headman on 1st July, 1962.

Residence: Seoding.

L a n d and numbers of p o p u l a t i o n:

529 The Seoding Location, or more correct Seweding, adjoins the Sekging Location in the south stretching about 10 miles from west to east. The residential area is in the centre of the location. The main road from Jan Kempdorp to Kuruman runs through the north-eastern part of the location which consists of the farms: N.W. 24 and N.W. 32, being 6,408 morgen 517 sq. roods in extent.

530 There is only the one village, Seoding in the location. A fountain and grazing area to the north-west of the village is called Matlhwasa while to the south-west there is Caba (c=being a palatal click of the Hottentot language). The altitude varies from about 4,000 feet above sea level in the west to below 3,500 feet in the Harts River bed. The average annual rainfall is about 17 inches.

531 The Census of 1951 recorded a population of 779 (343 m, 436 fem.). In 1957, 247 taxpayers were registered for Seoding. I estimate the present total population to be about 1,400 including about 450 workers absent from the location.

H i s t o r y:

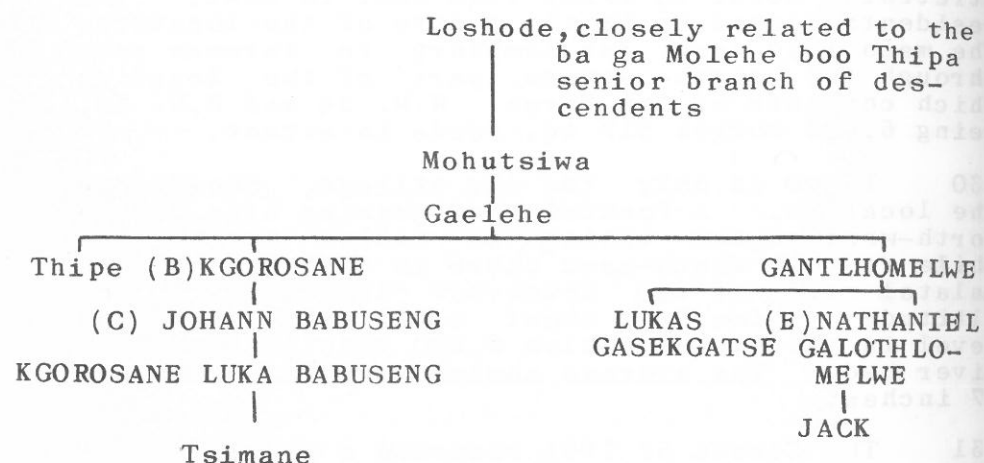
532 From the middle to the end of last century Seoding Location formed part of the area of chief JANTJIE MOTHIBI and his son LUKA. The chief was however, cut off from his land by the establishment of the district boundary, in 1899, when he lived with part of the tribe in the district of Kuruman. A year later, in August 1900, the British Bechuanaland Government appointed a headman for each location, the first headman of

Seeding being (A) NICHOLAS DIMPE KOONEENG MOGASHWE, a moKgatlba ba ga Manaana. No record can be traced about the termination of his services.

533 The second headman was (B) KGOROSANE (not Kgoresanie), a moTlhaping ba ga Molehe, appointed on 17th July, 1902, was chosen by the British Government. The headman died on 31st October 1926. He had the following sons:

- (a) Johann @ John Babuseng, last headman of the Location
- (b) Gaebei who died
- (c) Katlholo who died
- (d) Ntšé Benjamin still living.

As the headman comes from a high ranking family of the baTlhaping, his genealogy may be given here:



534 KGOROSANE was succeeded by his son (C) JOHANN (@ JOHN) BABUSENG, born in 1882 and appointed by the Government on 1st Nov. 1926. JOHN died on 28th May, 1952. His eldest son was Luka Babuseng.

535 Several names are mentioned in departmental files in connection with the succession to the headmanship, such as the above mentioned Benjamin, "Daniel" (=NATHANIEL) and Luka. When the people wished that Luka should succeed, it was erroneously stated that Luka were not a member of the tribe. The chief Native Commissioner then decided that the Location should for the time being remain

in charge of the headman of the adjoining location Sekging (who is of the same tribal branch as Luka) but added that "this does not necessarily mean that the two Locations should be amalgamated". Therefore on the death of the last headman JOHANN BABUSENG, the Department decided to appoint Headman MOSIMANEKGOSI ISAAC SEHĒMŌ of the Sekging Location to manage the affairs of Seeding on 7th July, 1952. After the death of Headman SEHĒMŌ the question of a succession for a headman for Seeding was raised again. In July, 1961 a certain (D) GAOTILWE was appointed headman by the Government, who had traditional rights to succeed to the headmanship.

536 The tribe suggested that somebody else should be appointed as headman. The late Headman JOHANN BABUSENG has a son and heir, GOROSANE LUKA BABUSENG, born 1915, who is married and has two children, the eldest being Tsimane. Luka lives in Klerksdorp and failed to assume the headmanship. An elder brother of JOHANN, Thihe, or his sons had left the tribe for Kimberley. There was no child in Thihe's first house, while the sons in his second house are Motšweng, Jacob and Keelepile. It was then decided that the brother of LUKA, (E) GALOTLHOMELWE NATHANIEL BABUSENG had to become headman and was appointed on 1. 7. 1963, possibly acting for LUKA's son Tsimane. NATHANIEL's son Jack works in Kimberley.

537 Although the baTlhaping form a small minority at Seeding, the location should be regarded as baTlhaping country, because it was under a Tlhaping chief during the last century. The majority of baKgatlba and baHurutshe immigrated later as ex-workers from the diamond digging at Klipdrift.

P o l i t i c a l O r g a n i s a t i o n :

538 The different tribal section in the Seeding Location have their own sub-headmen as follows:

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | baKgatlba ba ga Manaana | Head: Noko Magogoba
Motlhabani |
| 2 | baHurutshe | Head: Morure Olase |
| 3 | baNgwaketse | Head: Kegakilwe Tshipa |
| 4 | baTlhaping ba ga Molehe | Head: the headman of
the location. |
| | ba ga Phuduhutšwana | |
| | ba ga Maidi | |

539 Seeding Location forms part of the Majeakgoro Tribal Authority, under the chairmanship of Elias Pampier, headman of Lower Majeakgoro. Three members from Seeding serve as councillors on the Authority cf. par. 491.

540 I obtained most of the above material from the headman of Sekging, Isaak Sehêmo.

D i s t r i c t:

541 Native Affairs District Taung, Magisterial district Barkly West, Cape Province.

T r i b e:

542 BaTlhaping ba ga Molehe, baTlhaping ba ga Moduana, baTshweng and few baPhuduhutswana of the boo Mosakga clan. Totem: Kudu (tholo). The serial number of the baTlhaping of the old Barkley West Reserves is 32-07 in "The Preliminary Survey of the Bantu tribes of S.A." by Dr. N.J. van Warmelo.

H e a d m a n:

543 GEORGE KGAMA MOTHIBI, born in 1929, no regiment, was appointed headman on 8 Oct. 1962.

Residence: Mamutla

L a n d and numbers of p o p u l a t i o n:

544 Mamutle is a Location in the Scheduled Area and is situated between Boetsap and the Harts river, about 50 miles south of Taung. The Location is 13,226 morgen 149 sq. roods in extent and comprises the farms: N.W. 20, N.W. 21 and N.W. 35.

545 The following place names for villages and grazing area may be mentioned:

Mamutla, main village in the south-eastern corner of the Location, one mile from the Harts River.

Madithamaga, village slightly north of the centre of the Location.

Losasaneng, village between the two above mentioned villages

Thotayatau, village east of the road to Taung and between this road and the bend of the Harts river

Gataote, village now moved to the Shaleng area, situated between Madithamaga and Boetsap.

Lentswe-ya-Gatloung, grazing area north-west of Madithamaga towards the Butšwa Spruit.

Kgoro-ya-ga Mangkôpô, grazing area on the western boundary of the location extending towards Boetsap.

Magageng forms the boundary between Mmamutle and Shaleng. The Butswa spruit runs through the north-western corner of the location.

The European village Boetsap is called Butšwanyane in seTswana.

546 The altitude of the location is between 3500 and 4000 feet above sea level. The average annual rainfall is about 17 inches.

547 The Census of 1951 registered a population of 736 (335 male 401 female). In 1958, 276 taxpayers were registered under the headman. I estimate the population to be roughly 1300 including about 400 absent workers.

H i s t o r y :

548 In the last century the Mamutla area, as part of the whole Native area of the district of Barkley West, belonged to the house of chief Jantjie. This land was separated from the chiefdom by the Taung district boundary. The supervision of the area by a chief also fell into neglect after the Langeberg Rebellion of 1897. It appears that the people at no time acknowledged the superiority of the house of Mankuroane, e.g. chief Molale.

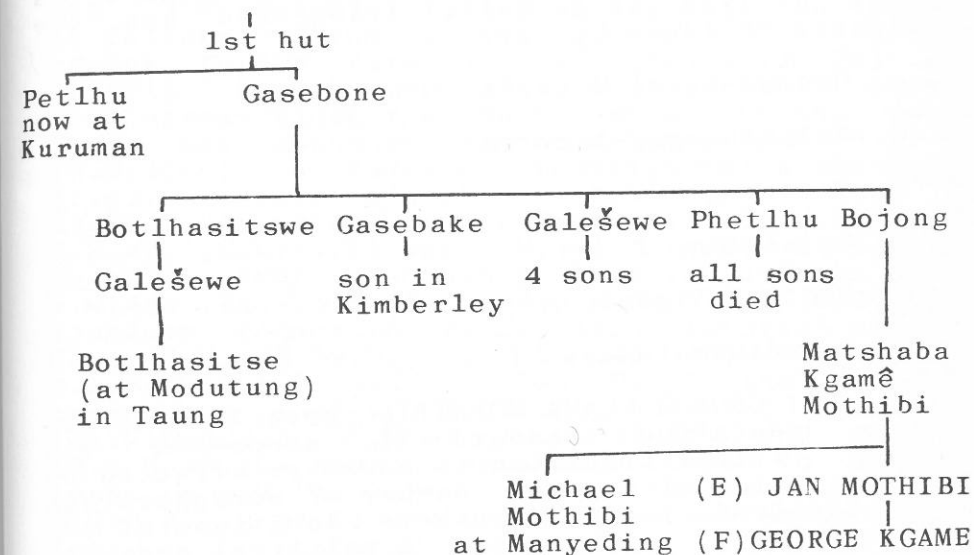
549 It is unknown when the Government appointed the first headman (A) EDWARD SEBE. He was probably appointed in 1897 and was not related to the chief's house or to any clan head. He was pensioned because of old age on 30th June, 1917. He was succeeded by his son (B) GAOLESE (not Kgaolis, as noted in departmental files), who was officially appointed on 1st July, 1917. On 30th June 1923 GAOLESE vanquished office because of ill-health. However, as no successor could be found he continued in an acting capacity until the 31st January 1924. He died in 1956. For one year, i.e. from 1st February, 1924 to 1st February 1925 (C) the headman of Shaleng and Witkoppies, NTOKO TSWAILE, took over the headmanship in addition to his own.

550 On 1st February 1925 the Government appointed (D) IKANENG GANAKGOMO as headman, after his election by the residents of the location. He retired because of ill-health on 1st February 1936 and died two years later.

551 Headman (E) JAN MOTHIBI was born in 1881 (he was a small boy during the Paratllhatle war), he had no regiment, and was officially appointed

as headman on 1st March, 1936. He was elected by the residents of the location, but as a distant relative of the Tlhaping chiefs' house, cf. genealogy below. Civil and criminal jurisdiction were conferred on him on 20 June, 1958. He died on 6 Oct. 1962.

552 Genealogy of headman Chief IX MOTHIBI



553 The headman's grandfather Bojong married a moTšhweng, Hanna, who had the sons: Mothibi, Rajane, Molehabangwe, Goitseona and Kgamê. The sequence in age cannot be stated for Kgamê. Bojong was very old when he died prior to 1880.

554 Kgamê, the headman's father had the same age as the bamaNgwato chief Khama in the Bechuanaland Protectorate and was named after him. (Khama is the old orthography). Kgamê lived at Magogong and married a moRolong, Kentlhwang who had the following children:

- a Ketshegeditse f
- b Keithumetse f
- c Mphagane f
- d Tshadikaa f
- e Mosadiamarope f
- f Ketshegeditse Jan m present headman
- g Boitumêlô m living

- h Molehabangwe m living
- i Kegomoditšwe f
- j Maid f

Kgamê died about 1891/3.

555 (E) JAN MOTHIBI married Mohulenyane, a member of the ba ga Maidi tribe and has the following children by her:

- a George Kgamê Mothibi m born 1929
- b Molehabangwe Jack m
- c Seitsang f
- d Kelaêgile f
- e Gaoteng Victor m
- f Mosadiwamotswana f

556 (F) GEORGE KGAMA MOTHIBI, born 1929, no regiment, education standard VI, succeeded his father. Tribal tradition is nowadays affected by the activities of a great number of strangers who were admitted to the southern locations of the district Taung. Therefore a political pressure group tried to bring in their elected head Leeuw-Sebe. GEORGE is however a traditional headman of the location, although the land of his forefathers was Majeakgoro. He married Vivian by whom he had four sons:

- a Rajane m born 1957
- b Bojong m born 1959
- c Galešewe m
- d Kealeboga m.

P o l i t i c a l O r g a n i s a t i o n :

557 In the location there is no clan organisation as it only forms a part of the single unit of locations previously forming part of Barkly West district. After 1835 until the end of the century the whole area was ruled by chief Jantjie Mothibi and later by his son Luka. The residents of this Location are of mixed origin and consist of baTlhaping ba ga Molehe, baTlhaping ba ga Moduana, few ba Phuduhutswana and baTšhweng.

558 The locations of Mamutle, Shaleng and Driefontein or Mmadipelesa have been grouped together in one Bantu Tribal Authority under the chairmanship of headman Jan Mothibi of Mamutla Location. The Mamutla Tribal Authority was established by Government Notice No. 886 dated 20th June, 1958.

559 The area of this Tribal Authority is defined as follows: "From the point where the boundary common to the farm N.W. 22 (B.A.W. 2. 28) and Mamutla Location meets the Harts River; thence down stream along the Harts River to the point where the boundary common to the farm N.W. 19 (G.W.17.1) and Mamutle Location meets the Harts River; thence along the boundary common to Mamutla Location and the farm N.W.19 (G.W.17.1), N.W.47 (G.W.8.28) and N.W.44A (Ba.W.Q.2.15), the boundary common to Shaleng Location and the farms N.W.44A (Ba.W.Q.2.15) and N.W.44B 1529/1882, the boundary common to Driefontein Location and the farms N.W.44B 1529/1882, N.W.46 (G.W.23.14), 17 M.n.Ba.W.Q.1-3 and 18 (Ba.W.Q.1-3, the boundary common to Shaleng Location and the farms 18 (Ba.W.Q.5.42), N.W.41 (G.W. 18.18) and N.W. 84 (B.A.W.10.10) and the boundary common to Mamutla Location and the farms N.W.84, (B.A.W.10.10) and N.W.B.A.W.2-28 to the point of commencement".

560 The number of councillors is laid down as a minimum of 9 and a maximum of 12, which are evenly divided between the three Locations: Mamutla, Driefontein and Shaleng. In October 1962 the councillors nominated by the chairman, Headman George Mothibi, are as follows:

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|
| 1) headman J. Mothibi | Mamutla |
| 2) Jackson G. Thole | " |
| 3) Lucas K. Mafora | " |
| 4) headman D. Mothelesi | Shaleng |
| 5) Piet Sereko | " |
| 6) Piet Sebako | " |
| 7) headman S. Marumogae | Driefontein |
| 8) Nelson Mokôpanêlê | " |
| 9) Nelson Moagi | " |

561 For schools, churches, and other particulars see the general introduction. I visited Mmamutle in April 1960 and obtained most of the above material from the headman and some old men.

D i s t r i c t :

562 District Taung, formerly district Barkly West, Cape Province, formerly British Bechuanaland.

T r i b e :

563 baTlhaping of the branches ba ga Maruping, ba ga Marumo, ba ga Moduana, few ba ga Molehe or Phuduhudu, baTšhweng and few baRolong. Tlhaping totem: kudu (thôlô). The Survey No. of the tribe is: 32-07.11

H e a d m a n :

564 MOEMISE FRANS SELEKA, born in 1904, was officially appointed headman on the 27th August, 1965. The headman has no jurisdiction and his location forms part of the area of the Mamutla Tribal Authority under the chairmanship of headman MOTHIBI.

Residence: Driefontein or Mmadipelesa.

L a n d and numbers of p o p u l a t i o n :

565 Driefontein Location is the westernmost part of the Taung district and was formerly part of the Barkly West. The main village, Mmadipelesa, is 9 miles north-west of the European village Boetsap (Butšwanyane in seTswana) on the road to Kuruman. The Driefontein Location is 13,279 morgen 486 sq. roods in extent and comprises the farms: N.W. 42, N.W. 43 and N.W. 45. There is only the one village mentioned above. A grazing area in the north-western part of the location is called Mokonare while another grazing area in the north bears the name of Gakadu.

566 The altitude of the location is above 4,000 feet above sea level. The average annual rainfall is below 17 inches. Groot Boetsap or in seTswana Butšwa is a spruit in the Driefontein Location, which is again a tributary of the Harts or Kolong.

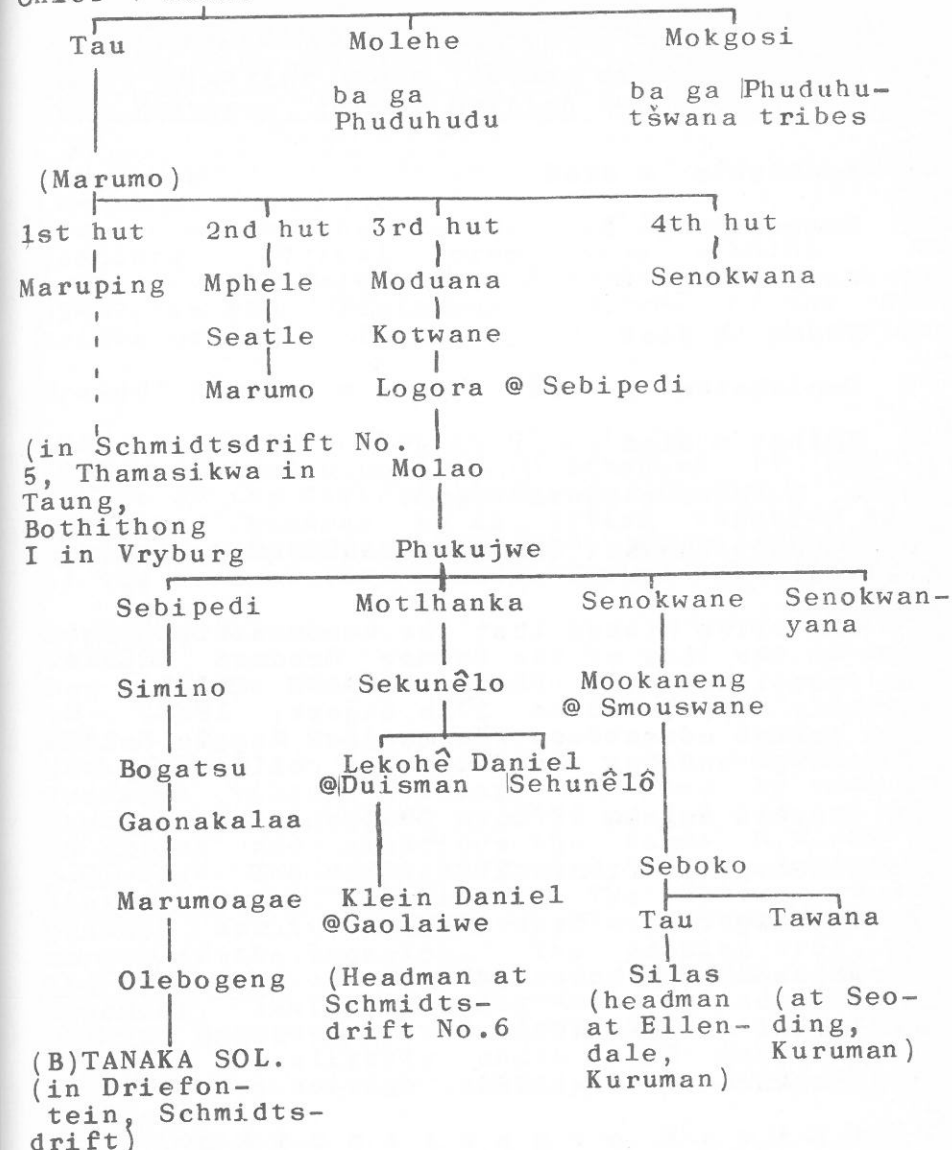
567 The population census of 1951 made no provision for the areas of separate headmen and recorded 1177 people for Driefontein and Shaleng together. Driefontein location has the larger population. In 1957, 341 taxpayers were registered under the headman. I estimate the present population to be about 1000-1200 people including about 400 workers who are temporarily absent.

History:

568 In the last century Driefontein was grazing land belonging to chief Jantjie and his descendants. Mmadipelesa owes its origin to people who came from Dikgatlong in 1908. On the 1st July, 1909 the Government appointed (A) JOSIAH TOTONYANE SELEKA of the boo Marumo clan of the baTlhaping as the first headman. He was pensioned on 31st March, 1938 and died the following year. His eldest son, MOEMISE FRANS SELEKA did not succeed because he was away working in Kimberley and did not assume duty as headman.

569 The next headman for Driefontein was then (B) SOLOMON TANAKA MARUOAGAE, officially appointed on 1st April, 1938. The headman descends from the high ranking baTlhaping branch of the ba ga Moduana of whom the genealogy is as follows:

Chief V MAMAE



The headman is a son of Isaak Olebogeng Marumoagae, who died in 1911. Solomon married Maqueene Martha, a Coloured, who has the following children:

- a Obakeng m died
- b Olehile Sreven m born 1933/4
- c Sannie f
- d Majabang f

- e Galolemogwe f
- f Mostitsane f
- g Boys m
- h Keobakile m died
- i Keobebogeng f
- j Kelebileng f
- k Thees m died
- l Gaolehelwe m died
- m Kgôbe m died
- n, o, p three children died.

Headman (B) TANAKA SOLOMON MARUMOAGAE died on 11.6.1965.

570 The tribe wished that the headmanship should revert to the line of the former Headman SELEKA. Above mentioned (C) FRANS MOEMISE SELEKA was officially appointed on 27th August, 1965. He has no school education. He married Maggie Seleka Gobonwamange and has the following children by her:

- a Gaseuna Seleka f born 1942
- b Kelemogile f born 1944
- c Modiakgetla m born 1946
- d Monnapula m born 1948
- e Tsitsi f born 1951
- f Dimakaco f born 1953.

P o l i t i c a l o r g a n i s a t i o n :

571 The headman is assisted in his work by five advisers, a circumstance which indicates his higher traditional status. They are: Jan Tutu, John Moafi, Gasereteng, Mokôpane and Jeremiah Marumoagae.

572 I obtained the above material from the headman and some of his advisers in April 1960.

D i s t r i c t :

573 District Taung, former district Barkly West; Cape Province, former British Bechuanaland.

T r i b e :

574 baTlhaping mixed, baTšhweng and few baRolong. Tribal totem: Kudu (thôlô). The tribes of the Barkly West Reserves have the number 32-07 in the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu tribes of South Africa" by Dr. N.J. van Warmelo.

P r e s e n t H e a d m a n :

575 DAVID LETSELEBE MOTHELESI, born on 16th Jan. 1896, attended school up to standard IV and is a member of the African Lutheran Church. He was appointed headman in an acting capacity by the Government on 30th July, 1959. Shaleng forms part of the area of the Mamutla Tribal Authority.

Residence: Shaleng.

L a n d a n d s t r e n g t h o f p o p u l a t i o n :

576 The Shaleng location, also called Witkoppies, is situated two miles north of the European village Boetsap, 77 miles by road from Taung. The location is 6539 morgen 541 sq. roods in extent and comprises the farms N.W. 31 and N.W. 32. The village Shaleng is situated in the centre of the location. The Butšwa or Groot Boetsap spruit runs through the south-eastern corner of the location. The grazing area along the boundary of Shaleng and Mamutla is called Magageng. Another grazing area, called Leuputsane adjoins Magageng to the west. The altitude of the location is slightly above 4000 feet above sea level. The average annual rainfall is below 17 inches.

577 The Census of 1951 grouped the area of Driefontein and Shaleng and recorded a population of 1177 for the total area under the two headmen. In 1957, 332 taxpayers were registered under the headman of Shaleng. I estimate the present population to be about 900 to 1000 including about 300-400 absent workers.

H i s t o r y :

578 During the last century, from 1835 on, the land of the present Shaleng location was controlled by Chief JANTJIE MITHIBI and later by his son LUKA. About 1890 the Government appointed a

headman over this area by the name of (A) MARMAN MARMAN, who was a moTšhweng. He was succeeded by his son (B) EHITLHILE MARMAN who was headman for only two years before he died in 1897.

579 The next headman was (C) NTOKO TŠWALLE, born in 1843, appointed in 1897. He was a moRolong and was the maternal uncle of the present headman. He terminated his services in 1908.

580 On 1st July, 1908 (D) WILLIAM BANANI DIPHALE a moTlhaping ba ga Molehe, born about 1840/50, was appointed headman by the Government. He retired because of old age on 31st March, 1922 and died in 1934.

581 The next headman was (E) TÊBÊILE GOAILE, a son of headman (C) NTOKWE, and was born in 1892. He was appointed by the Government on 1st April, 1922. On 26th June 1923 he terminated his services and joined the S.A. Police. He died in 1926/7. As no suitable headman could be found, his father NTOKO was reappointed on the 27th June, 1923 and acted until 31st May, 1925. He died in 1931 at the age of 88.

582 (F) BOIKANYO MARMAN, born in 1891, son of above mentioned EHITLHILE MARMAN, was appointed headman by the Government on 1st June, 1925. He married Sanna, a moTlhaping of the boo RaPhetlhu sub-clan and had the following children by her:

- (a) Maadimo f
- (b) Panaki f
- (c) Sereditše f
- (d) Motseokae m born 1928
- (e) Kipolakae f
- (f) Keikonetswe f
- (g) Marman m died
- (h) Nêô m
- (i) Gaothibe m.

The headman died on 29th July, 1959.

583 The tribe nominated the present headman, (H) LETSELEBE DAVID MOTHELESI, born 1896 and son of Mompoti Petrus Mothelesi. He was appointed

by the Government as acting headman on 30th July, 1959. He married:

- 1 Maggi, a moRolong who died in July 1955, and had the following children by her:
 - (a) Kabubeng Swingford m born 1925, died
 - (b) Dintletse f died
 - (c) Madimo f died
 - (d) Matadi f died
 - (e) Bathobakae m died
 - (f) Letšogile Dover Ross m born 28.7. 1928, in S.A. Police at Kimberly
 - (g) Kelebileng Elsie f
 - (h) Julia Gotšwaletsweng f
- 2 Kebalepile Rosi, a moHurutshe, married in 1959, she has one son,
 - (a) Matong Stoffel m born 1959

584 I visited the tribe in April 1960 and obtained most of the mentioned material from the headman.

D i s t r i c t :

585 Taung, formerly in district Barkly West, Cape Province,

T r i b e :

586 BaTlhaping ba ga Phuduhutšwana, baTlhaping ba ga Molehe, baTlharo baTšhweng and a large proportion of recent imigrants, such as Xhosa, Matebele and others.

Tribal totem: tholo (kudu).

H e a d m a n :

587 BONTSIBUILE FRANK MALANOKA, born 1918 was appointed by the Chief Bantu Affairs Commissioner on 21st August, 1965, and having no jurisdiction.

Residence: Majeng.

L a n d and numbers of p o p u l a t i o n :

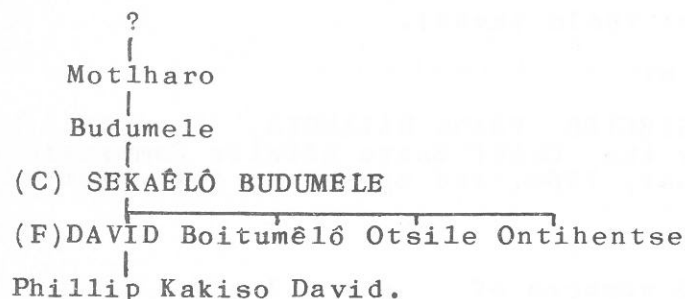
588 The Majeng Location is the southernmost part of the Taung district, 17 miles west from the town of Warrenton. The location includes the farms, Woodfield and Mpuli's Well which fall into the Scheduled Area according to the Land Act of 1913, while Hallton and Highlands are situated in the European area. The Majeng Location is now 13 225 morgen 149 sq. roods in extent and includes the farms: H.V.32, H.V.59, H.V.60, H.V.62, H.V.63 (portion called Highlands). The whole farm Highlands, now forming portion of the Native Reserve and 3028 morgen 3 sq. roods in extent is registered separately as Trust purchased in the name of "MOLALE in his capacity as chief for the time being of the Natives resident at Highlands" and in the names of "The Surveyor General for the time being of British Bechuanaland and the Civil Commissioner for the time being of the division of Taung, British Bechuanaland, as Trustees in terms of British Bechuanaland Proclamation No. 62/1889 for and on behalf of the heads of families registered as resident thereon".

589 There is only one village, Majeng. No place names in the Tswana language are known for other localities in this area. The altitude is between 3500 and 4000 feet above sea level. The average annual rainfall is about 17 inches. Between Majeng and the farm Woodfield the Department has established an Irrigation Scheme, of which the Natives at present make little use.

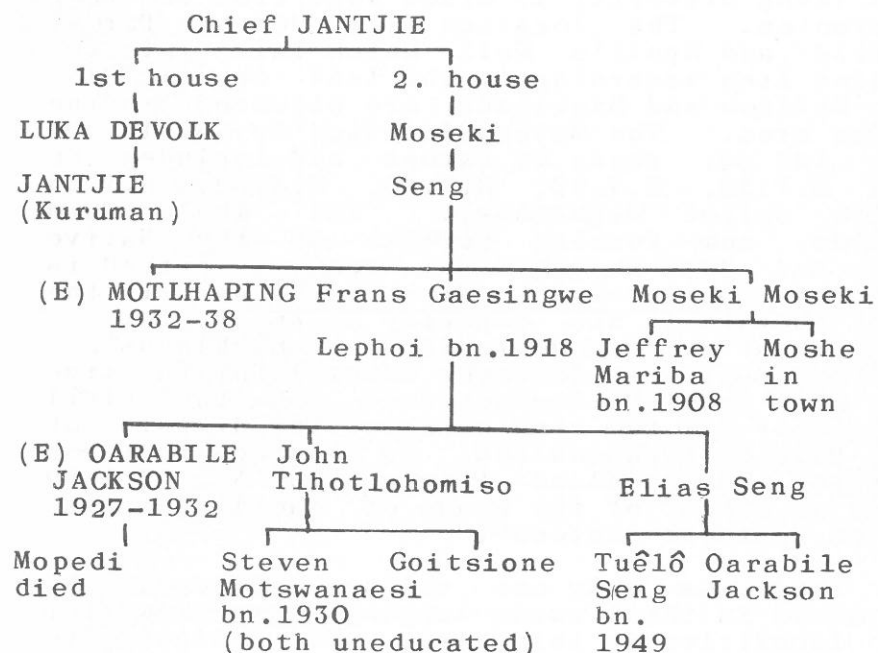
590 The Population Census of 1951, recorded a population of 1004 (498 male, 505 female) for the Majeng location and 10 (6 male, 4 female) for the farms Hallton and Highlands. In 1957, 225 taxpayers were registered under the headman. I estimate the total population to be about 1700 including about 500 absent workers.

Skeleton genealogies of headmen.

Budumele family:



Seng family:



H i s t o r y:

591 Majeng is an old village and belonged to the chief's house of Jantjie during the last century after 1835. It was then called Majeng a Sebego.

The chief appointed (A) SEOSENS, member of the ba ga Maidi tribe, as the first headman. The next headman was (B) WILLIAM BANANI DIPHALE, born about 1840/45, who became headman in the 1890ies. In 1908 he went to Shaleng and became headman there. From 1908 to 1910 the Majeng location had no headman.

592 On the 1st October, 1910, the Government appointed (C) SEKAËLÔ BUDUMELE as headman. He was born before 1860. His father was Budumele who died before 1890. SEKAËLÔ lived at Dikgatlong. He married only one wife, Lorole, a moTlharo who had the following children:

- a Piet m died
- b Budumele m died
- c David m born 1889 headman (F)
- d Ntidisang f died
- e Boitumêlô f
- f Otsile m lives in the Transvaal
- g Ontihentse m, lives in Johannesburg
- h Galoitsiwe f.

SEKAËLÔ was pensioned because of old age on 31st December, 1926 and died in 1931.

593 The residents of the Location then elected a headman from another family of the Phuduhutswana section of the tribe. This was (D) OARABILE JACKSON SENG, born about 1902, appointed by the Government on 1st January 1927, initially on one year's probation. The headman died on 30th November, 1932.

594 He was succeeded by his father, (E) MOTLHAPING MOSEKI SENG, born about 1880, appointed by the Government on 1st March, 1938. The headman married Toto Seitsang who had 6 children of which 4 are still alive. The following sons are remembered by my informants: JACKSON OARABILE, Tlhotlohomiso who is crippled and stays at home, and Elias born about 1908/10 who married Sina, and has children.

595 The next headman was the son of headman (C) SEKAËLÔ. He was (F) DAVID BUDUMÊLÊ, born in 1889 at Dikgatlong, who attended the Tigerkloof School

to standard VI and was a member of the London Missionary Society. He belonged to the baTlhaping ba ga Phuduhudu section and to the Diboane clan. He was appointed by the Government on 1st April, 1938. He married Maria Waterboer, a Griqua woman, and has the following children by her:

- a Eva f
- b Lena Keselepile f
- c Keemakae Phillip m born 1923, working at Barkly West
- d Kakišo David born 1925
- e Masisi Sanna f
- f Gasegantse f died
- g Keasaletse f died
- h Dibōra f died
- i Dingkwetse f died
- j Mariam f
- k Jeremiah m farming on an irrigation plot.

596 The headman was deposed on 19th January, 1959. He died on the 30th April, 1960.

97 The population at Majeng comprises many migrants who have worked in Diamond diggings. The place is undoubtedly a centre for illicit dealing in diamonds, liquor and dagga. Although the location presents a poor appearance the inhabitants seem to have no lack of ready cash with the result that they are not interested in work. The irrigation plots, provided by the Department, were unoccupied until 1964. In view of all these circumstances the location could not be controlled effectively by a headman particularly as it was also a centre for political agitation.

598 The sons of BUDUMELE were unsuitable to succeed, some political agitators tried to become headman. In the end the Chief Bantu Affairs Commissioner appointed (E) FRANK BONTSIBUILE MALANOKA, born 1918, educational standard II, member of African Lutheran Church, with effect from 21st August, 1965. For some time an agricultural ranger, Jonathan Lobelo, born 1911, educational standard VI, had looked after the administrative work of the Location, but was not

appointed as headman. It appears that the baTlhaping population of the location wishes to have a headman of the SENG family who is related to the house of chief Jantjie. (cf. par. 590 genealogy). The proper persons to succeed to the headmanship would be JEFFREY MARIBA SENG acting for TUÊLO SENG.

P o l i t i c a l O r g a n i s a t i o n :

599 Majeng is an old centre of the forefathers of chief Jantjie Mothibi, whose heirs live now in Manyeding in Kuruman district. The elder of the two sons died in 1966.

600 After the death of Headman BUDUMELE, the local administration has been completely disorganised. Headman MALANOKA works with 6 councillors he has chosen. The Location is not yet organised under the Bantu Authority Law.

601 I visited the village Majeng in April 1960 and obtained the above material from the former headman and some old men.

D i s t r i c t:

602 Herbert, Reserve administered by Bantu Affairs Commissioner Kimberley

T r i b e:

603 baTlhaping ba ga Phuduhutšwana, Totem:Tholo, ba ga Maudi and others. Headman's own people are baTlhaping and baHurutshe. The tribe is No. 32-08 in the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu Tribes of S.A." by Dr. N.J. van Warmelo.

Present H e a d m a n:

604 KLEIN DANIEL GAOLAIWE SEHUNÊLÔ born c. 1878/79 and appointed headman on 2.9.1941. Civil and criminal jurisdiction were conferred on him in 1957 when he became chairman of the Bantu Authority (Procl. No. 314 dd. 1.3.57), and on 1.4.1960 he was appointed as chief. The headman is uneducated, however, he understands Afrikaans and is a member of the S.A. Methodist Church.

Residence: Schmidtsdrift Reserve No.6.

L a n g u a g e:

605 Tlhaping dialect of seTswana, Afrikaans is generally understood.

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n:

606 The Reserve, being the Released Area No.11, is situated on the western bank of the Vaal River and administered for agricultural purposes as S.A. Native Trust Land. It is 45 miles from Kimberley by road. The sections from North to South of the Herbert Reserve, are numbered as follows:

No.	Name	Morgen	sq.rds.	Farms
1&2	Baviaanskrantz Location	3 910	296	NW7
3	Boomplaats Location	7 429	5	NW1 NW2 NW 3
4	Schmidtsdrift Location	3 784	300	R27
5	Plaatdrift Location	6 645	360	R26 R29
6	Sehunelo Location (Sivonel)	10 746	120	R30 R31 R25
Native owned farm, Sehunelo grant		3 937	304	
		2		
Total Released Area No.11		36 453	185	

The Sehunelo Location No. 6 (wrong spelling: Sivonel) is for agricultural purposes subdivided into the following 12 grazing camps: No. 7 Plaatdrift, No. 22 Tselane, No. 23 Mathew, No. 24 Mariba, No. 25 Lusepan, No. 26 Gatsite, No. 27 Sivonel fountains, No. 28 Jan Smuts, No. 29 Segano, No. 30 Sanddrift, No. 31 Moremedi and No. 32 Bogatswe.

607 The altitude of the Herbert or Schmidtsdrift Reserve is 3400-3900 ft. above sea level. The average annual rainfall which is irregular is between 14 and 16 inches.

608 The Census of 1951 recorded 2 796 persons in the Reserve.

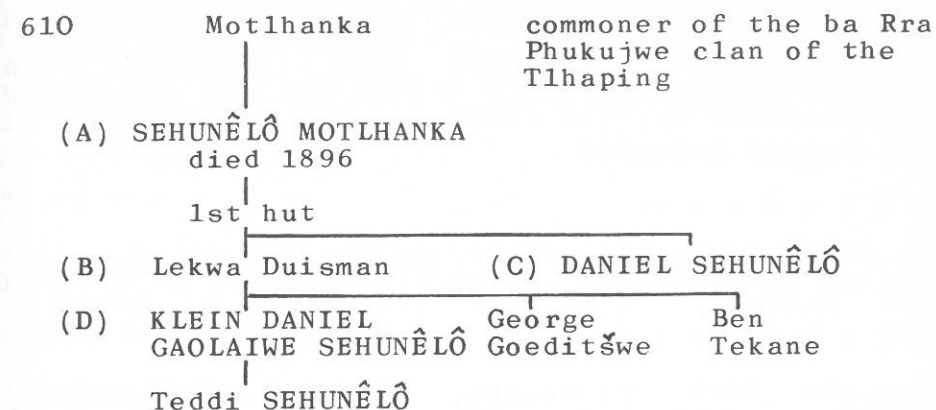
Locn.No.	Census enumera- tor	m	f	Total	Esti- mate f. 1960	Estimate 1960 (roughly incl. absen- tees
1&2	800	199	258	457	600	900-1000
3	801	283	348	631	800	1000-1200
4	802	159	252	411	480	700
and	805	not recorded				
5	803	337	405	742	850	1250
6	804	243	312	555	700	1100
Total		1221	1575	2796	3430	4950-5250

609 Taxpayers:

Locn.No.		in 1957	Local Tax 1960
1&2	Thomas Leburu	221	54
3	Coenraad Cedraas	271	99
4	Hendrik Phetlo	229	60
5	Klein Martins Cedraas	232	102
6	Chief Kl.Daniel G.Sehunelo	277	88
-	do	?	11

Total Herbert Reserve 1230

Genealogy:



History:

611 The parent tribe is said to have migrated (prob. in 1897) from Kuruman to Dikgatlong where the chief's great-grandfather Motlhanka was a commoner of the boo Raphukujwe clan. His son I SEHUNÊLÔ, born about 1800, went while young from Kuruman to Dikgatlong. By his first wife, Dikokolane, he had the sons Lekwa (or Lekobe) Duisman and DANIEL (bn. 1845/50). SEHUNÊLÔ's second wife had no issue. The first headman (B) LEKWA DUISMAN was not able to do his duty as headman. Therefore chief MOTHIBI sent (C) SEHUNÊLÔ to assist him. One informant says that DUISMAN and his sons did not survive old SEHUNÊLÔ. A certain Shushu from Gamogana was the head councillor to assist the unable headmen. The tribe seems to have elected (C) DANIEL to succeed after SEHUNÊLÔ's death in 1896. (C) DANIEL married Ditême and had the sons Klein Daniel, George Goeditšwe and Ben Tekane. He retired as headman on 1 January 1941, and died in 1944, and is said to have been 99 years old.

612 (D) Klein Daniel, (also cf. par. 604), succeeded as headman and had the following wives and children:

- 1 Seakanyô
 - a Sehunêlô Teddie (TêTê) m, bn. 1912, lives in Kimberley
- 2 Nthetsang Liesi, a moRolong boo Seleka married according to Christian rites
 - a Dorkas Foni f
 - b Emma f
 - c Mariam f

d Amos m born 1939

e Tekane Ben m

3 ?

a Daniel Sehunêlô

Regiments:

613 As to regiments and initiation ceremonies there is no tradition.

Political Organisation:

614 In 1957 (1 March), the Schmidtsdrift Location established a Bantu Authority (Procl. 314). Headman Sehunêlô became the chairman and the 4 headmen of the Reserve were placed under his jurisdiction. These headmanships are partly hereditary and partly elected by their tribesmen, as described below. Originally they were independent.

615 The tribe is administered in terms of the Bantu Authorities Act, and the chief has a nominated council of 7 advisers. Before 1957 he had no councillors to assist him. It seems that he does not exercise his civil or criminal jurisdiction.

616 I visited the tribe in June 1957 and in July 1960.

District:

617 Herbert, Cape Province. Although the Magistrate has his office at Douglas, the Reserve is administered by the Bantu Affairs Commissioner at Kimberley.

Tribe:

618 batlhaping ba ga Molehe and others such as batlhaping бага Phuduhutswana, boo Moduana and ba ga Maiddi. There are also some baRolong and batlharo. Survey No. of the tribe: 32-08.2

Present Headman:

619 KEGOMODITSWE THOMAS LEBURU, born 1901, no regiment, member of the Church of Christ. He was appointed by the Government as independent headman on 28 November 1955, but he has been subordinate to the jurisdiction of the chairman of the Bantu Authority, KLEIN DANIEL GAOLAIWE SEHUNÊLÔ, since 1957.

Residence: Baviaanskrantz Location No. 1 & 2 in the Herbert Native Reserve.

Land and strength of population:

620 Baviaanskrantz Location No. 1 & 2 is the north-western triangle (farm No. NW7) of the Herbert Native Reserve, Released Area No. 11. It is 3910 morgen 296 rds. in extent and adjoins Boomplaats Location in the east. The Location is sub-divided into four grazing camps, Baviaanskrantz, Kafferkamp, batlhaping camp and Batlharo camp. The residential area is situated in the centre of the Location. The Kimberley-Danielkuil road runs through the Location.

621 The altitude is below 4000 ft. above sea level. The average annual rainfall, which is irregular, is between 14 and 16 inches. For the population figures cf. par. 608,609. I estimate the present population, including absent workers at 900-1000.

Genealogy of Headmen:

622 Philipppies

(A) BODIGAÊLÔ LEBURU

Franz Gasegamotse Leburu (C) REUBEN Mopoeng
LEBURU

(D) THOMAS LEBURU

History:

623 At first Locations No. 1 and No. 2 had separate headmen, since about the time of the Langeberg Rebellion in 1897. The headman of Location No. 1 was (A) RIMITON PHOFU who died 1917. He was succeeded by (B) DAVIS GERT SHUSHU THUBISI (in NAD files "Timeto") who was born in 1864 and officially appointed on 1 January 1919. In August 1925 he took over the headmanship of Location No. 2 also, because the two Locations had been amalgamated. He retired because of old age on 30.9.1947.

624 The first headman of Location No. 2 was (A) BODIGELO KLEIN LEBURU LEBURU, the grandfather of the present headman. He had come from Taung about the time of the Langeberg Rebellion of 1897. He died on 15 August 1925. He married Gaitsiwe and had the following sons:

- a Gasegomotse Franz
- b Tsholohêlô Andries
- c Mopoeng Reuben, headman (C)
- d Melamu Dixon.

In his time the population of the Location was 363.

625 Headman D.G. THUBISI was succeeded by headman (C) REUBEN MOPOENG LEBURU, born on 8.2.1880. He was an uncle (rrangwane) of the present headman, and was appointed by the Government on 1 October 1947. He married Gosetsemang and has sons who work in Kimberley. On 5 August 1955 he took sick leave and died on 20 August 1955. The present headman acted for him from 1 July, 1955.

626 The present headman, (D) KEGOMODITSWE THOMAS LEBURU succeeded, cf. par. 619. He is the son of above mentioned Franz Leburu, who was born about 1860 and died sometime between 1926 and 1936. Franz married Peloebuang and had the following issue by her:

- a Tekane Johannes m
- b Sekaoeng f
- c Kegomoditswe Thomas m present headman
- d Gobonye f

e Sebatlwang f

f Sehenno f died

g Mmadingwa f

He married Rebecca Leburu according to Native custom and has the following issue by her:

- a Etseneng Hilda f
- b Molatlhwa Dikson m
- c Lisa f
- d Gabuitsiwe m
- e Ithusang Robert m
- f Anyatseng Isaak m
- g Gaoreediwe Mabusise f
- h Melamu f died.

627 I visited the headman in July 1960.

D i s t r i c t:

628 Herbert, Cape Province. The Herbert Reserve is administered by the Bantu Affairs Commissioner at Kimberley.

T r i b e:

629 BaTlhaping ba ga Maidi, but also baTlhaping ba ga Molehe (-Phuduhudu), ba ga Phuduhutswana, boo Marumo, boo Moduana and others such as baTlharo, baTshweng, baRolong and baKwena. Survey No. of the tribe: 32-08.3.

Present H e a d m a n:

630 TOGOWE TOLMAN MOTABOGI, born 1900, married, was appointed by the Government on 1st August 1966. He is subordinate to the jurisdiction of the chairman of the baTlhaping Bantu Authority at Herbert (established by Procl. No. 314 dd. 1.3.1957). Residence: Boomplaats Location No. 3 in the Herbert Native Reserve.

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n:

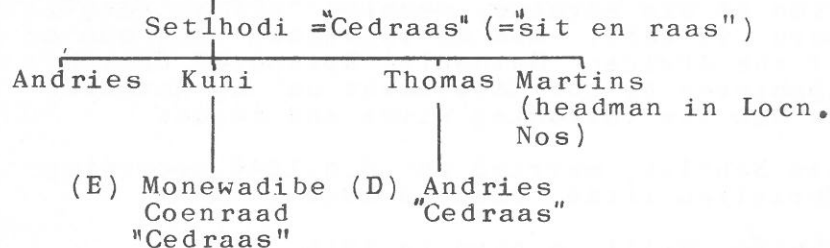
631 The Boomplaats Location No.3 is the northern part of the Herbert Native Reserve, situated between the Vaal River and the Location No.2. It is 7429 morgen 5 rds. in extent and consists of the farms NW 1, NW 2, NW 3. For agricultural purposes the location is sub-divided into the following grazing camps:

No.14 Mokgoros camp, No.15 Boomplaats camp, No.16 Davidsdrift camp and No.13 Linkskamp.

632 For the number of population of Boomplaats see par. 608, 609. I estimate the total population including absent workers to be 1100-1200 in 1960.

Skeleton g e n e a l o g y of headmen:

633 Dikutšo (of a Tlôkwa family of the Tribe)



History:

634 During the Anglo-Boer war the people had a foreman, (A) JAN LEKOB, who was suspended from office before 1915. He was succeeded by (B) LONTSITSE SAMUEL (in files also LYNX or LINKS), a moTlhaping boo Marumo, appointed before 1915. He resigned from his post on 1 January 1924.

635 The next headman (C) was ANDRIES JACKALS, who was also a moTlhaping boo Marumo, and he was appointed on 1 January 1924. He had a son Sebipidi under which name he appears himself in Government files. He died on 24.9.1942.

636 The next headman was (D) ANDRIES SETLHODI "CEDRAAS", born in 1871 and son of Thomas and grandson of Setlhodi cf. genealogy above. He was appointed independent headman by the Government on 1 July 1943 and died on 21 November 1944.

637 ANDRIES's great grandfather was DIKUTŠO who is believed to have lived in Schmidtsdrift Location No. 4 during the reign of Chief Jantjie Mothibi. He was moTlôkwa.

638 ANDRIES's grandfather, Setlhodi or "Cedraas" had the following sons: Andries, Kuni, Thomas, Martins and Ati by the first wife, and Jani and Juel by the second wife. The grandfather died before 1883. (D) ANDRIES is a son of Thomas and the present headman, (E) COENRAAD is a son of Kuni. Kuni was born in Schmidtsdrift and was not very old when he died in 1895. He had the following sons by his wife Selelakae: Cedraas Setlhodi, (whose residence is unknown since he left to a place somewhere in the Cape Colony), Kalamore Piet Modithibi and Juel who died all and left no sons, and the youngest son of Kuni was Monewadibe, the present headman.

639 ANDRIES was succeeded by the present headman (E) MONEWADIBE COENRAAD SETLODI or "CEDRAAS". The headman's family name is nowadays known by the administration as CEDRAAS, which is the Afrikaans translation of his surname, meaning "sit en raas". He was born in 1883, had no regiment, and was a member of the African Methodist Episcopal Church. He was appointed by the Government on 22 November 1944. He has the following wives and issue:

1 Maburu Sebolai, married on 6.6.1946 according to Christian rites, died in 1949

a Dikutšo Willi m born in 1916, died

b Mosainyane Sina f

c Modithibi James m born in 1920, left the tribe

d Kuni Jack m born 1926

e-h five children died

i Gaongalelwe Frank m born 1940

2 Emmeli Moji

no issue.

The present headman acted for COENRAAD SETLHODI after he had become blind. (F) COENRAAD SETLHODI died on 5 May 1965. For the present headman see par. 630.

640 I visited the tribe in July 1960.

D i s t r i c t:

641 Herbert, Cape Province, The Herbert or Schmidtsdrift Native Reserve is administered by the Bantu Affairs Commissioner Kimberley.

T r i b e:

642 Mixed baTlhaping of the sections ba Phuduhutswana, ba ga Maudi, and families of other tribes, such as baTsatsing, baKgatla, baKwena. The tribes of Herbert district (also called Douglas) are classified as No. 32-08 in the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu tribes of South Africa" by N.J. van Warmelo. For the present Survey the No. is 32-08.4. Totem: thôlô (Kudu).

Present H e a d m a n:

643 NGAKATSHIMANE JACK MOKUBUNG, born in about 1900, was appointed headman by the Government on 1st August 1966. He is subordinate to the jurisdiction of the chairman of the Bantu Authority since 1957.

Residence: Schmidtsdrift Location No. 4

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n:

644 Schmidtsdrift Location No. 4 is the central portion of the Herbert or Schmidtsdrift Reserve. The Location consists of the farm R27 and is 3784 morgen 300 sq.rds. in extent. For agricultural purposes the Location is now sub-divided into the following grazing camps: No. 6 Phetlo, No.16 Kgatlani, No.17 Batsatsing, No.19 Bakgatla, No.20 Bakwena. The road from Kimberley, 45 miles distant, crosses the Vaal River by a bridge at Schmidtsdrift. The roads to Douglas, Campbell, Danielskuil and Delpoortshoop all branch off from here. There is also a European Hotel, the police Station and the tribal clinic. The residential area is situated in the centre of the Location.

645 The altitude is below 3500 feet above sea level and the average annual rainfall is between 14 and 16 inches.

646 For the population figures and number of taxpayers see paras. 608, 609. I estimate the total population, including absent workers to be now between 800 and 1000.

History:

647 The first headman for Location No.4 was (A) MOKGOPANE SELEKA, a moRolong who was probably appointed by Chief JANTJIE (descendents now in Kuruman) in 1897. He retired on 31 October 1923. His successor was (B) KLAAS IKANENG, appointed 1 November 1923 and who died on 8 May 1936. He was succeeded by (C) JOHANNES IKANENG, appointed by the Government on 13 August 1936 and who resigned on 30 November 1941.

648 The next headman was (D) KAREL BAREND SEBOLAI, born between 1860 and 1870 and who was appointed on 12 December 1941. He was a moTlhaping ba ga Molehe and married Betty Sebolai by whom he had the following three sons:

- (a) Lebogang John
- (b) Mosimanegape John
- (c) Waadintwa Robinson, born in 1914, headman (E)

Headman KAREL retired on 30 April 1953 and is still living.

649 The next Government headman was KAREL's son (E) ROBINSON BAREND LEBOGANG SEBOLAI, appointed on 1 May 1953. He was convicted on a charge of assault after he had already served a sentence of imprisonment. His parents complained about his stealing his brother's and their cattle and so he was dismissed on 18 December 1956.

650 The family name Sebolai, as those of Sehunelo and of Setlhodi (Cedraas), is of some importance in the history of the Schmidtsdrift Reserve. The Secretary of the Bantu Authority is also a member of the family Sebolai.

651 The next and present headman is (F) MOOMENG HENDRIK PETLHO, born in 1888, appointed on 10 November 1956. The headman is a moTlhaping ba ga Maidi who came from Mogogong originally. His family name Phetlo is not related to the Tlhaping chief's name Phetlhu. He had the following wives:

- 1 Maria Jackals
 - a Mosadiwamarope f
 - b Modisaotsile m died

d Kenalemang f works in the teaching profession

d Elia Phetlho m born 1918

e Kenosi f died

f Japan Phetlho m born 1920

- 2 Mapoul Ellen, married after the death of 1 according to civil rites and with bogadi, no issue.

The headman died on the 29th September 1964.

652 The headman's brother (G) KLAAS GABOKGUTLE PHETLHO was appointed headman on 11th November 1965. He retired on 1st June 1966 because of old age. The present headman is (H) NGAKATSHIMANE JACK MOKUBUNG, born in about 1900, married, and appointed as Government headman on 1st August 1966.

D i s t r i c t:

653 Herbert, Cape Province. The Herbert or Schmidtsdrift Native Reserve is administered by the Bantu Affairs Commissioner of Kimberley.

T r i b e:

654 Mixed baTlhaping, mainly of the sections ba ga Maidi, but also ba ga Moduana, and ba Phuduhutswana; there are also some baTlharo, baRolong and baKgatla ba ga Rungwana. The tribes of the Native Reserve in the district of Herbert are No. 32-08 in the "Preliminary Survey of the Bantu Tribes of S.A." by N.J. van Warmelo. This section is No.32-08.5 in the new Survey.

Present H e a d m a n:

655 PETRUS KWANTLE SENYE SENYE, born 5.6.1898, education: Stand. IV, elected headman and officially appointed on 1.2.1961. He is subordinate to the jurisdiction of Chief SEHUNÊLO, the chairman of the Bantu Authority.
residence:
Plaatdrift Location No.5.

L a n d and strength of p o p u l a t i o n:

656 Plaatdrift Location No.5 is situated in the centre of the southern part of the Herbert Native Reserve between Schmidtsdrift and Sehunêlo Location ("Sivonel"). It is 6645 morgen 360 rds, in extent, consisting of the farms R26 and R29. For agricultural purposes the location is now subdivided into five grazing camps called: No. 8 Balang, No. 9 Jonas, No. 10 Mohapanele, No. 11 Cedraas, No. 12 Noko. The Location has two residential areas, one where the two roads leading to Campbell and to Douglas branch, the other south of the spot where the road to Cambell crosses the location boundary between the locations. The altitude of the location is 3400-3900 ft. above sea level and the average annual rainfall is between 14 and 16 inches.

657 For the population and taxpayer figures see paras. 608, 609. I estimate the present total population including absent workers to be between 1000-1300.

H i s t o r y:

658 The first headman for the Plaatsdrift area was (A) WILLIAM BALANG, born in 1883. He was

260

headman probably from 1897; from 1 January 1918 he received a government subsidy. He died on 17 January 1923.

659 The second headman was (B) MARTINS SETLHODI "CEDRAAS" who was appointed as independent headman by the Government on 1 March 1923. He died on 2 May 1945. He had the following wives and issue

1 Matlabose Katarina

- a Klein Martins m present headman
- b Emmely f
- c Ati m
- d John m
- e Monnakwadi Sina f

2 Peloareng

no issue.

660 MARTINS is a son of Setlhodi and grandson of Dikutšo as indicated in the skeleton genealogy of the headman of Location No. 3 cf. par. 633, and description of the family Setlhodi = Cedraas in par. 638.

661 Headman MARTINS son, (C) KLEIN MARTINS SETLHODI "CEDRAAS", born 3rd September 1890, member of the Native Independent Congregational Church, was appointed headman by the Government on 3 May 1945, and has since 1957 been subordinate to the jurisdiction of headman SEHUNELO. KLEIN MARTINS married Senayang Sanna according to civil rites and has the following children by her:

- a Mita f
- b Martin Sehunêlô m
- c Gaeyatlholwe Nelson m is a teacher.

He retired because of old age on 31st January 1961.

662 The successor is (C) PETRUS SENYE KONTLE SENYE, born 1898, educational standard IV, a member of the Bantu Mission Society NICC, was officially appointed as headman on 1.2.1961. He is a moKgatla бага Manaana of the Kgatleng ga Mošopa clan and is said to be related with one of their chiefs in the olden days. His descendance is as follows:

Senye

Setlalekgosi (born in Schmidtsdrift)

Senye Senye

PETRUS SENYE

Senye Senye was born up to 20 years before 1867, he married Mmatiê a moRolong and died in 1945. PETRUS SENYE married Phojeng (Potšweng), a moTlhaping from Schmidtsdrift and has the following children by her:

- a Mantire f
- b Kegomoditše f
- c Mokgôrô James m born 1929 (tribal Secretary)
- d Gabanakgosi m
- e Gainame f
- f Mokgele f
- g Maserame f
- h Thêbê m

The Location is part of the Tribal Authority for Schmidtsdrift.

663 I visited the tribe in July 1960 in order to obtain the above information.

NUMBERS INDICATE PARAGRAPHS RULING CHIEFS AND HEADMEN
ARE INDICATED BY CAPITAL LETTERS

A

ages and Marital
condition 103
agricultural census 137,
138
agricultural co-opera-
tives 135
agricultural improvement
123, 128
agricultural school 144
Aitsiwimang 197
Amos Sehunêlô 612
Anderson Missionary 32
Anglican Church 157
Anyatseng Isaak 626
ape-man 48
appeal 12
"Area C" 293
areas of the tribal head-
men 128
assegaais 51
auctions 140
August Mankoroane 190
australopithecus ples-
ianthropus 48

B

Babopang 422
BABUSENG, Daniel headman
491
Babuseng, Johann @ John
533, 535, 536
BABUSENG, GALOTLHOMELWE
NATHANIEL 536
Babuseng, Gorosane Luka
536
Baepi 206
Bagamisi 426
Bailusi Benjamin 443
Bainei Pauline 443
BAISITSE, JOSEPH L. Head-
man 204, 206, 216
Bakaileng 195, 277
Bakgosing (kgoro) 202, 426
BALANG WILLIAM 656,
658
Bantu Authorities 19, 630
Bantu township 307
Bantu villages 94
Banksdrift 206, 336
Baompotse 465

Barakanye 204
Barkly West District 1,
6, 7, 97, 98, 111
Basetlha 300
Basutoland 68
Bauche, father 157
Baviaanskrantz Location
619, 620
Bayer's Halt 204, 348
beans 148
Bethanie Sam 491
betterment areas 47, 129
birth 171
Bloemhof Commission 47,
57
Bloem, Jan 62
Boabilwe 342
Boatlotšwe, Piet 330
Bodumele Lucas 465
Boers 41, 189
Boetsap 545
Bogatswe 606
BOGOSING 277, 278, 299
Bogosing, irrigation land
307
Boingôtlô 235
Boinyane Joseph 520
Boitumêlô 197
Boitumêlô Daniel 464
Bojang 82
Bojong, Molehabangwe 553
Bojong, Mothibi 553, 556
Bonokwane, Morwa 302
Bontlhogetse 194
Bontshang Elsie Lefifi
371
Boomplaat Location
630, 631
Bothetheletsa 81
Bothithong in Vryburg
403
BOTLHASITSE 16, 85 328,
479, 480
Botlhasitse Galešewe 87
Botlhasitse Gasebone 39
Botlhasitse, William
204
boundaries of district
39
boundary of Griqualand
West 40

Bower, Capt. 42
Brink 31
Briqua 59
British Bechuanaland 1
British Bechuanaland
Proclamation 11, 45
British subjects 6
Brown Lekula Kgosiwang
Mahura 273, 280, 284
Budumêlo, David 592, 595
Budumêle, Jeremiah 595
Budumêle, Keemakae Phil-
lip 595
Budumele, Ontihentse 592
Budumele, Otsile 592
BUDUMELE SEKAELO 592
Bulpan (Lichtenburg) 418
Bushmen 34
businesses 167
butcherries 140
Butšwa Spruit 545
Butšwanyane 545
Buxton Location 216, 363,
364
C
Caba 530
Campbell, John 17, 60, 79
cattle farming 165
cattle raids 36
cattle raids by the
Korana 192
Cedraas 630, 650, 656
see Setlhodi
Cedraas Ati 638, 659
CEDRAAS, COENRAAD (E) 638
Cedraas Jani 638
Cedraas John 659
Cedraas, Juel 638
Cedraas, Kalamore 638
Cedraas, Klein Martins
659, 661
Cedraas, Kuni 638
Cedraas, Martins 638
Cedraas, Matlabose Kata-
rina 659
Cedraas, Modithibi 638
Cedraas, Monewadibe 638
Cedraas, Piet 638
Cedraas, Senayang Sanna
661
Cedraas = Setlhodi 638
Cedraas Thomas 638
census 460, 608
chief recognised 16
"Chorachoqua" 56
Choseng 204

CHUBISI, JOHANNES (E) 484
CHUBISI, MOAGISI (F) 484
church sites 158
circumcision 11, 151
clan-headmen 17
clans 202
clinic 168
cotton 134
council 18, 206
court 11
Cowan, Dr. 32
Cushitic tribes 53
D
dairy products scheme 136
Daumas, Agenor 38
Daumas, Clement Tlabeng
204, 206, 244, 337
DelaRay, Andrian 189
density of population 99
De Volk 81
diamond, first 37
diamonds 28, 29, 38, 597
Dibere Mankurwane 378, 384
Dibi (Rebe) 55
digging at Klipdrift 537
Dikgatlong 68, 78, 181,
484, 592, 611
Dikhutšo Willi 637, 639,
660
Dikhuting 204, 397, 399
dikgôrô 202, 426
dikgosana 17, 202, 426
Dimpe Sedumedi 229
Dinokana 403
Dinokaneng 411
Dinko ("Cholo") 487
Dipeki 284
Diphale, William Banani
580, 591
Diphoko, Richard 287
Dipuding 399, 458
disease 170
Disebo Looseboy 358
Dithakong 32, 52, 69, 79,
80, 412
Dithakwaneng 81
divination 170
dog tax 47
Doms, Theodor 39
Dorothea Chilelelo 520
Driefontein Location 81,
558, 564, 565
Dry harts 206, 293, 302
DUISMAN, LEKWA (B) 611

earthquake 47
 "economic unit 133
 Ehentse 196
 Bikomo 56
 emblem the yellow fish 66
 Emily Gadikgatthe 452
 employable males 166
 engravings 51
 explorers European 31
 farm land 43
 farmers, Bantu 121
 farms bought 112
 field cornetcies 1
 fish breeding 142
 Fokeng 33
 foot and mouth disease 47
 forest reserve 125
 forestry activities 143
 Fôrô 84

G
 Gaainame 194
 Gaapse mountains 124
 Gaaauw Gauw 57
 Gabaitumele 341
 Gabanatlhake George 419
 Gabapolwe 367
 Gabodigelo 81
 Gaboileng 518
 Goboipelwe Abraham 486
 Gaborone, Godfrey 2066
 Gabotlatlhoga, Simon 330
 Gadikgatle, Grace 452
 Gaebalwe 520
 Gaelebangwe 89
 Gaesi 235
 Gaeyattholwe Nelso 661
 Gagoresepe 235
 Gakadu 565
 Galebetlwe Andries 182, 190
 GALESEWE 46, 85, 87, 110, 416
 Galeshewe Mothibi 556
 Galotlhomelwe Nathaniel Babuseng 528
 Gamadiwano 499
 game 37
 Gamokake 397, 399
 GANOKE, Thêiô John Headman 206, 338, 363, 369, 370
 Ganoke, Kanana 370
 GANOKE, LEKWENE 369

Ganoke, Mosimanewapula 370
 Gaobakwe 81
 Gaobusi Flennie 204
 Gaokgorwe 195
 Gaolatthe Bani 388
 GAOLESE (B) 549
 Gaonewe Emily 215
 Gaonewe, G. 204
 Gaongalelwe, Frank 639
 Gaothibe 582
 Gaotilwe (D) 535
 Gaoteng Victor 555
 GASEBONWE 35, 36, 82, 85, 187, 477
 Gasegomotse Frans 624
 Gaseonale, Kokwe 238
 Gaserotse, R, Thekiso, Jackson 204
 Gasethata Elise 316
 Gasetilwe 371, 373
 Gasimelwe 422
 Gataote 545
 Gatsite 606
 Gaumakwe 451
 general dealers 167
 George Goeditswe 611
 Goaille, Têbêile 581
 Goitseona 553
 Gonntshe, Wilson Rratampae 204
 Goôrôgô 381
 Gôpane 494
 Gordonia district 97, 98
 Gorileng 195, 198
 Gosetsemang 625
 GOSIAME, ONKABETSE BEN 354
 GOSIAME, PIET 353
 Gosiane, Tšolohêlô 354
 Gotsileakgosi Victor 388
 government agents 38
 government headmen 12-18, 153, 203, 204, 402, 426, 427
 grasses 123, 124
 grazing 309
 Grey, Sir George 16
 Griqua 6, 34, 80
 Griqua Rebellion of 191
 Griqualand West 6
 Griqualand West Proclamation 6
 Griquastad 56
 Gysikwa 59

H
 Hallton 588
 Harries, Kaptein C.W. 186
 harvesters 95
 headmen 12, 16, 17, 18, 153, 203, 204, 402, 426, 427
 HEAVYFIGHT SEMATLE MOLALE 199
 Heekane 79
 Heleman 373
 Hendrik Hop 31
 Herbert, district of 8, 10, 97, 98
 Herbert Reserve 609
 Highlands 7, 260, 588
 historical dating 69
 Hope Town 37
 Hospital Area=Location No.1 204
 Hospital, St. Konrad's 169
 Hottentot country 68
 Hottentots 56, 407
 hunting 47
 Hurutshe 65, 202, 238, 286, 426, 477, 494, 527, 537, 538, 603
 Hurutshe boo Manyane 470
 huts 162
I
 Iehe 82
 Ikaneng Ganakgomo 550
 IKANENG, JOHANNES 647
 Ikaneng, Klaas 647
 income bruto 133
 initiation ceremonies 200, 425
 insanity 171
 Irrigation farming 133
 irrigation land 130
 irrigation plots 130, 597
 irrigation scheme 131, 132, 588
 Ithusang Robert 626
 Itireleng 244
 Itlhabaneng Mac Sekgoetšô 446
 Itoko 313
J
 JACKALS, ANDRIES 635
 Jan Smuts 606
 Jantjie 16, 82, 89, 182, 191
 Jantjie Kgosieneweng 81, 488

Jebetle, Lucas councillor 206
 Jennings, Rev. 89
 Jim Molale Location 274
 John Ganoke 204
 Jonas 656
 Joubert, Gen. 418
 Junia Matlakala Thagane 423
 jurisdiction 11, 13
K
 Kabêlô 507
 Kabubeng Swingford 583
 Kaffir corn 148
 Kake, Matosi 204
 Kalamone, P. 211
 Kan 264
 Kannakamora 79
 Kanye 514
 Karoweetz 79
 Kasienyane 182
 Kasienyane Selle Stanley 214
 Kaukwe reserve 302
 Kealegoba 196
 Kealeboga Mothibi 556
 Keamogetse Anna Mosebie-mang 330
 Keamoitse 235
 Keang Reserve 415
 Kearabetse 197
 Keatweng 443
 Kebalepile 387
 Kebalepile, Joseph 452
 Kebalepile, Stanley Nto-kwe-379
 Kegakilwe Tshipa 538
 Keelepile 536
 Keelešelang 443
 Kegogile 82
 Kegomoditšwe 554
 Kegomoditšwe, Evening 452
 Keikanamang, Klaas 267
 Kei! Korana 60
 Keipheleng 195
 Keipiditse 443
 Keiteng, Nelly 452
 Keithumetse 554
 Kekeng 190
 Kelaegile 198, 555
 Keleleng 196
 Kelemekae 82, 190
 Kelemisang 196
 Kenalemang 651
 Kenalemang, Thêkiswaane 255

Kenamile 300
 Kenewang Maria 452
 Kentlhwang 554
 Kereng, Lili 452
 Keseentse Motôke 319
 Kesekwaile 417
 Kesenyang, Rosy 452
 Ketshegeditse 554
 Ketšhwanetse 235
 Kgagane 412
 Kgagane, Thuna (B) 463
 Kgakgamatšo 487
 Kgame 82
 Kgamê 553, 554
 KGANTLAPANE 16, 416, 417, 419, 425
 Kgantlapane, Benjamin Mogonono 422, 439, 443, 444
 Kgantlapane, son of George 435
 Kgantlapane, Ezekiel Mantolong 450
 Kgantlapane, Henry Sešaba 419, 433
 Kgantlapane, George Gabanatlhake 431, 435
 Kgantlapane, Mašoboka Job 425
 Kgantlapane, Mokgêthê 452
 Kgantlapane, Moleko Waggon 422, 425
 Kgantlapane, Nyôkô William 421, 425
 Kgantsang 223
 Kgaotsang Kgaotsang 238
 Kgatla 286, 537, 642, 644
 Kgatla ba ga Kgafêla 202
 Kgatla ba ga Manaana 65, 202, 238, 407, 426, 527, 538, 662
 Kgatla ba ga Rungwana 654
 Kgatla ba Mašoga of Manaana 389
 Kgatlani 644
 Kgatleng ga Mošopa 662
 Kgatlhane, Sam 491
 Kgathumane 204
 Kgatumanje 260
 Kgobadi 293, 294, 302
 Kgobottle 415
 Kgomonyane Jan Pampier (B) 481
 KGOROSANE (B) 533
 Kgoro ya ga Mangkôpô 545
 Kgosiemaka, Kese 375
 Kgosietsile 81, 342
 KGOSIETSILE 182, 195, 196
 Kgosietsile William 435
 Kgosing, David 206
 Kgosithêbê 252
 Kgositlolo 252
 baKgothu 68
 Kguduga, Isaak 255
 Khoane 196
 Khora 56
 Kikantsê mang, Gladys 452
 Kimberley district of 8, 10, 97
 King, H. Cecil 38
 Klein Chwaing 81
 Klein Daniel 611, 612
 Klein Pudimong 260
 Klerksdorp (Matlhosane) 407
 Kobua 426
 Koe-e 79
 Kok 277, 279, 299
 Kok, Adam 54
 Kok John Matthias, trader 32
 Kok Samonne 287
 Kokoming 399, 451
 Kolong 179, 204
 Konong 81, 84
 Koola 70
 Koppie Enkel 451
 Korana 38, 56, 76, 188
 Korana lost their land 193
 Korana-Tswana 59
 Korosani (C) 518
 Kwena 494, 629, 642, 644
 Kwena of Sechele 470
 Kuni Jack 639
 Kurumanddistrict 182, 611
 L
 labour 131, 166
 Lala 520
 land commission 5, 47
 land report 43
 land settlement 5
 Langeberg 58, 83
 Langeberg Rebellion 46, 86, 478
 Langwater 347
 Letela 47
 Lattakoon 32
 Leatsenyane 230, 327
 Lebogang John 648
 LEBURU, B. KLEIN LEBURU 624
 Leburu, Gaitsiwe 624

Leburu, Kegomoditswe Thomas 619, 626
 Leburu, Mopoeng Reuben 625
 Leêpô 78
 Leeuw spruit 52
 Lekobê 611
 LEKOBÔ, JAN (A) 634
 Lekwe 81, 182
 Lekwene 371, 373
 ba ga Lekwene 374
 Lentswe-ya-Gatloung 545
 Lerôpô 338
 Lesang 182, 195
 Lesego Gakeinee 300
 Lešôbô 190
 Lešole Soldat 284
 Lešowe, Martins 204, 269
 Letlhapong 364
 Letlhogile, Raymond 444
 Letlonkane 328
 Letshajelešweu 336
 Letšogile Dover Ross 583
 Leuputsane 500, 576
 Levy 493
 Lichtenstein, Henrich 32
 limestone 28, 474
 links 60
 literacy 104
 Lobelo, Jonathan 598
 local tax 101
 Logobate 69, 75, 81
 Logore 410
 Lohala la lontšwe 201
 Lohala lo lošweuyane 201
 Lokgabeng 204
 London Mission 31, 35, 156
 Longaneng 399, 441
 Lontsitse Samuel (B) 634
 Looseboy Sisi, councillor 206
 Lorathu Matlôla 494
 Losasaneng 545
 Loselong 204, 223
 Lotlhakeng 80
 Lucas Baepi 301
 Luka 81, 82, 191
 Lusepan 606
 Lunx or Links 634
 M
 MAABULE 411
 Maakakantwa 201
 Maakakang 201
 Maakakgosi 201
 Maakapula 201
 Maakathata 201
 Mnabathobatho 198
 Mmabathobatho 198
 Mabatsane 204
 Mabatsane, Frank Molema 336, 341, 342
 Mabothe 367
 Mac Thihe 287
 Mackenzie Rev. 42
 Madi 190
 Madibotoka 82
 Madikgwa 198
 Mmadipelesa 558, 564, 565, 56
 Maditlhosi 314
 Madithamaga 545
 Maditung spruit 222, 380
 ba ga Maditwa 351, 356
 Mafora, Lucas K. 560
 Mmagaejangwe 190
 Maganêla 201
 Maganeng 204, 294, 545, 576
 magistrates 14
 Magogong 81, 94, 204, 206, 306, 307
 Magopêla 206, 222
 Mahakane 51
 Mahalbi cult 51
 Mahenyakgosi 201
 MAHUMAPELO 412, 413, 419
 MAHURA 35, 36, 62, 79, 81, 82, 182, 186, 188, 277
 boo Mahura 286
 Mahura, Brown 202, 206
 Mahura, Jeffrey 206
 Mahura, Jerry 204, 291, 300, 301
 Mahura, Kong 264
 Mahura, Mahukubung 277, 281
 Mahura, Molehabangwe 277, 281
 Mahura, Monyenyan 302
 Mahura, Morwa 269
 Mahura, Nieman 204, 280, 283, 302
 Mahura, Sekate Moitseman Bogosing 298
 Mahura, Stamvol 182, 190
 Mahura, Stanley 190
 Mahutô 82
 Maida -Phuduhutšwana war 416
 MAIDI 71, 410, 411, 554

ba ga Maidi 527, 591, 618
629, 654
ba ga Maidi, origin of
407
ba ga Maidi, tribal area
398
Maingard, I.F. 59
Majabe, Piet 211
Majaapō 201
Majeakgoro, Lower 473,
475
Majeakgoro, Upper 474,
475, 498, 500, 501
Majeakgoro Tribal Au-
thority 488, 489, 481
Majeng 81, 83, 488, 594
Majeng a Sebege 591
Majeng irrigation scheme
131
Majeng Location 587, 588,
591
Makaleka 367
Makgalagadi 54
Mmakepile Martha 483
Makgêthê 419
Makgothi, M. councillor
206
Makgwe-stat 204
Mmakgolo 190
Makodi, Jackson 491
Mokolonkwane, Stanley 204
Makuru, Ramasesane Moses
432
Makuru, Semašwe Frank 432
MAKURU, TSONKANE 432
Makwalakwala 85
Malaala 79
MALANOKA, BONTsIBUILE
Frank 587, 598
Malatelakgosi 201
Malapitse 260
Malefifi 373
Malekōpa 518
Malema 79
Malesego 373
Maletakgosi 201
Maletê, Bos 238
Malōba, White Loba 467
Maloka, George 279
Mamae 182
MAMAE 70, 71, 76
Mamathêbê 426
Mmamatlhe 190
Mammale, Lydia 464
Mmamoiithui J. 316
Mamokawa 47
Mmamorwa 190

Mamusa 35, 62, 80, 156, 188
Mamutla tribal Authority
488, 489, 558, 563, 575
Mamutle 81, 543, 544
Mamutle (Manthe) 399
Manaka Joseph 464
Manesapula 201
Mang 364
Mangwagape Johannes Pu-
oetjata 206, 213
Mangwagape Stanley 204
MANGWEGAPE TSHIPO 206
Mankhane 195
Mankuroane 16, 38, 39,
63, 81, 82, 182, 190,
194, 197, 416.
Mankuroane, Adam 252
Mankuroane Galebethwe
Andries 250
Mankuroane, Rakuna Andries
232
Mankuroane, August 250
Mankuroane De Beer 204
Mankuroane Rabodigêlō De
Beer 381
Mankuroane Kgosietsile
John 197
MANKUROANE KGOSIKEEHE,
SCOTCH 175, 197, 199
Mankuroane, Lešobo Stof-
fel 381
Mankuroane Silas 249
Mankuroane Mahura Stam-
vol 263
MANKUROANE, MAHURA STANLEY
204, 206, 259, 267.
MANKUROANE THATAETSILE
SMASH 204, 206, 242, 249,
251.
Manokwane 206
Mantatee hordes 33
Manthatisi 33
Manthe Location 395, 399
Mantolong, Esekiel 452
Manyapelo, Samuel 385, 388
Manyeding 81
Manyoro, John 287
Mapadira 381
Mapareeha-Maperera 79
Mapoitsile 306
Mapoul Ellen 651
Maquassi 62
Maqueene Martha 569
Mareii 79
Mareinyane 79
Mariba 606

MARMAN, BOIKANYO 582
MARMAN, EHITLHILE 578
MARMAN MARMAN 578
Marope-a-tau 324
marriage 12
marriages registration
11
married couples 150
Martins 198
Marubiseng 260
Marujanee 260
Marujanee 79
Marumaalala 426
Marumo 70, 72, 73
bagaMarumo 17, 72, 202,
286, 563, 629
Marumoagae, Olebogeng
Isaak 569
MARUOAGAE, TANAKA SOLOMON
560, 569
Maruping 32, 73, 81, 155,
182
ba ga Maruping 563
Mariam Morwenyane 435
Masetlhokiwa 84
Mašetlwane 70
Mashiêla 201
Mashoboko 419
Mashwe see Mašwe
Masitakgosi 201
Masito, Kanono 265
MASSOUW 39, 62, 418
MASSOUW, DAVID 38, 63, 192
Massouw's Korana 41
MASSOUW TAAIBOSCH RIJT
57, 60
Mašwe 58, 77, 78, 182,
277, 299, 171.
Mašwe Molale 297
Matebele (Xhosa) 426
Mathanthabe 204
Mathew 606
Mmatiki 487
MATLAKALE 411
Matlaopane 426
Matlapana 411
Matlapane 514
Matlapaneng 206, 222,
298, 380

Matlhakale, Samuel 452
Matlhako 204
Matlhako spruit 274
Matlhe, Max 287
Matlhole(in Logobate) 384
ba ga Matlhokwana 238
Matlhopo 195
Matlhwasana 530
Matlokobele 327
Matlolane 79
Matlotlakgosi 201
Matolong 204, 324
Matseng 399, 450, 451
Matsieta, Paul 206
Matsietsi, Paul 319
Matsitsi 89
Matsukutswana, Elizabeth
331
MATŠWE, RAMODISANE JO-
HANNES 505
MATŠWE, JOHN 491
Matšwe, Nkō 505
Mayeng see Majeng
Meēpadire 355
Megalithic culture 53
Melamu, Dixon 624
MENTOR, JUEL 482
Mepatho 200, 425
Mere 415
Meshael Isaak 355
Metsi Matšwe 81
Middelrand 115
MILE 69, 182
minerals 28
mining 30
Missionary activities 155
Mitši 411
Mmoko 316
Moagi 560
Moalusi, Johannes 390
Moapitšo, Joseph 464
Moatlhudiemang 443
Močweding 204
Močweng 536
Modiboa 470
Modimong 65, 204, 206, 260
Modisagarekwe John 464
Modisakomo 338
Modise 494

Modithibi James 639
 Maditiwe 79
 Modito 507
 Moditsane 341
 Moduana 70, 73, 182
 ba ga Moduana 470, 563, 618, 629, 654
 MODUKANĒLO 70, 182
 Modutung 81, 204, 307, 364, 397, 399, 458
 Modutung spruit 380
 Moehi, Thaelo 353
 Moendia Ernest 197
 Moepiemang 234
 Moffat, Rev. Robert 33, 47 62
 Mobabisi 426, 466
 Moganeng 302
 MOGASHWE, NICHOLAS DIMPE KOONEENG 532
 Mogopêla 23, 274
 Mogorosi, E.W.L. chief's deputy 20, 206
 Moganupelo 79
 Mohapanele 656
 Moholoanyane 443
 Mohoole 204
 Mohule, Sannie 487
 Mohulenyane Sophie 212
 Mohurutshe 31
 Mohutsiwa 385
 ba ga Mokalake 374
 Mokasi, Goakae 302
 Mokassa 204, 206, 244
 Mokgara 22, 52, 187, 293
 Mokgara spruit 294
 Mokgareng 204, 206, 298 379
 Mokgareng dam 222
 Mokgeti 356
 Mokgethisi 465
 Mokgorongkwane, Selogilwe 238
 ba Mokgôpa (Rolong 389
 MOKGOSI 70, 71, 76, 182
 Mokonare 565
 Mokôpanêlê, Nelson 560
 Mokopiemang Seeme 269
 MOKUBUNG, N. JACK 463
 Mokwa, Israel 287
 MOKGOSI 75
 MOLALE 16, 70, 79, 81, 82, 190, 194
 boo Molale 286
 Molale, Brophy 204

Molale, Tlhapaetsile Jim 212
 Molatlegi, Wheel 390
 Molatlhwa Dikson 626
 Molatlhwa George 211
 MOLATOMME, MAITATWE AN-DRIES 517
 Molayapeba 182, 195
 MOLEHABANGWE 55, 78, 79, 182, 412, 554
 Molehabangwe, Jack 555
 Molehe 182
 ba Molehe boo Thue 378, 384
 бага Molehe 17, 75, 202, 359, 470, 563, 618
 ba ga Molehe boo Thipa 384
 Moleko see Kgantlapane
 Molelema 399, 439, 440, 441
 Molema 79, 82
 Moletasope 426
 MOLETSANE 61
 Molokedi 70
 Mončwe, Guard 302
 Mončwe, George 202
 Mongala 426
 Moniemang Ester Ntokwe 388
 Monnahela 385
 Monnahela, Crosby 390
 Monnamme, Samson 491
 Monnamorwa, Freddie 206
 Monnapula 316, 355
 Monnapula, Joseph 287
 Montshiwa 38
 Montshiwa Willie 443
 Montšo 328
 boo Monyalenyane 286
 Mooketsi, Piet 491
 Mooshwene 55
 Mophalane 413
 Mopoeng, Reuben 624
 MORAKENĒLO 70
 Marakile 470
 Moremedi 606
 Moretela 302
 Moretiimang Jemaima 487
 Moretlwe, G. 204
 Morokane range 41
 Morubisi 277, 278, 299
 Moruru Olase 538
 Morwagabusa 327
 Morwagabusa Samuel 182, 194

Morwagabusa Michael 330
 Morwanyane Mary 435
 Morwaotsile 234
 Mosadiamarope 554
 Mosadiamotšwana 89
 Mosadiwamotšwane 555
 Mosadiwatshabo 85
 Mosainyane Sina 639
 Mosake 78, 182
 Mosakga 70, 79
 baa Mosakga, Clan 342, 542
 Moseke, Elias 594
 Moseradibe, J.J. 375
 Mosêšane David 520
 Mosha 234
 Mosielele, Skaaf 390
 Mosimanegape John 648
 MOSIMANEGAPE, SMASH 371
 Mosimanekgosi 518
 Mosimanewakgotla, Samuel 330
 Mosimanewamakgoa Johannes Pušô 467
 Mosimanyane Khanene 255
 Mosimeotsile 358
 MOSINGI, PHOLOANE JOHN 434
 Mošomasêkgwa 514
 MOSOŠO 419, 420, 443, 425 462
 Moss 324
 MOŠWEU, chief 407
 MOŠWEU RIYT TAAIBOSCH 192
 Mošweu = White 204 s.a Massouw
 Motabogi, headman Togowe Tolman 630
 Moteane, Andrew 390
 Motêkgê John 520
 Mothanthanyane 307, 441
 Mothanthanyane 397, 399,
 MOTHELESI, LETSEBE DAVID 560, 575, 583
 Mothelesi, Maggi 583
 Mothelesi, Mompoti Petrus 583
 Mothibedi Frans 204
 Mothibedi Sebegile 222
 MOTHIBI 6, 34, 79, 80, 82, 182, 184

MOTHIBI, KGAMA GEORGE 543, 555, 556, 559
 MOTHIBI, JAN 551, 555
 MOTHIBI, JANTJIE 516, 548 557, 568, 578, 599, 657
 Mothibi, White 302
 Motimêla 507
 Motlalepula Maria 452
 Motlhabani Motelese 359
 Motlhabani 36, 62, 413 414, 415, 417, 419, 425
 Motlhabani Noko Magogoba 538
 MOTLHABANI, WALTER LETSIÊ 395
 Motlhabatshimo 314
 Motlhabeng = Mašwe - stat 204
 Motlhaneng 223
 boo Motlholoakgotse 286
 Motlola 70
 Motšariemang Phillip 388
 Motselapala 85
 Motsemme 313
 Motseokae 582
 Motshabi 385
 Motshabi Moehi 359
 Motshwene 55
 Motšorogwane 484
 MOTŠUMI 411
 Motšusimang 342
 Motswamasimo, Rebecca 342
 Motswasele Abel 435
 Motšwedding 244, 337
 Mphagane 554
 Mphele 73
 Mpuli's Well 588
 Munnik, Coloured priest 157
 Mušo 342, 419
 Myra 302
 N
 Native areas, extent 117
 Native Commissioner 15
 Native Commissioner, Chief of the Ciskei 13
 Native Land Act 7
 Native Reserves 1, 5
 Ndimbazana, Lorenz 206
 Neo 582
 New Kaukwe 302

New Lands 484
 Ngaka 284
 NGAKE 411, 412, 413, 426
 Ngake clan 453
 Nganaphuti 88
 Ngwaketse 187, 527, 538
 Ngongorego 355
 Ngotwanê 426, 466
 Njwanahatse 302
 Nkabang 381
 Nkabang area 381
 Nkabang spruit 222
 Nkagisang Gert 465
 Nkhabele 407
 Nnanna Francina 520
 Nokaneng 58, 76
 Noko 656
 Norlim 93, 364
 Nthai 198
 Nthetsang Liesi 612
 Ntikang, G. 204
 Ntikang, Selepanyo 204
 Ntlongwe 443
 Ntoko Tswaile 549
 NTOKWE 581
 Ntokwe, Ašêlang 370
 Ntokwe, Gorileng 387
 NTOKWE, KEBALEPILE STAN-
 LEY 388
 Ntokwe, Kgotlangwe 386
 Ntokwe, Kingsley 386
 NTOKWE, KUNAKAE KINGSLEY
 387
 NTOKWE, WILLIAM MAMALE-
 BANG 387
 Ntokwe, Manyapele 386
 Ntokwe, Kebalepile Stan-
 ley headman 206
 Ntokwe, Thataitsile 386
 Ntšê Benjamin 533
 Ntsekang, Henry 491, 498,
 506
 NTSEKANG, MALESWANE 504
 Ntshakang, Stoffel 491
 511, 521
 Ntshelentlhane 474, 498
 Ntshenene, Maria 355
 Ntšwanahatse 294
 Nukuni 60
 NYOKO CHARLES 423

O

Obakeng 569
 Ohalotse Willy

Ojwaemang 197
 Olebogeng 89
 OldTaung 206, 324
 OLEHILE, PIET 357
 Olehile Steven 569
 Onewang Angelina 198
 O'Reilly, D.A. 37, 338
 Orengeng Booi 204
 Orengeng Segwesapelo 359
 Oshupeng 214
 //ôtlh 364
 "Owl" Bushman chief 54

P

PAKWE 371, 373
 palaeolithic hunter cul-
 tures 49
 Pampier Jan Kgomonyane
 480
 PAMPIER, ELIAS LECHUTE
 471, 480, 486, 487, 491,
 498, 506
 Pampierstat 474
 Panmure 451
 Paratlhatlthe 407
 Partors 198
 passes to Native 11
 Patlanyane, Piet sub-
 headman 206
 Patuni 60
 Peloebuang 6262
 PELOKGOSI 89
 Petlho see Phetlho
 Pharatlhatlha 47
 Phatlhanyane Piet 204
 Pheduetsile 36, 83
 Pheko Taylor 464
 Phelokgosi 84
 PHETLHU 46, 82, 83, 84, 89,
 182
 PHETLHU OLEBOGENG 90
 Phethlo, Elia 651
 Phetlho, Hendrik Moomeng
 651
 Phetlho, Japan 651
 Phethlo Klaas G. 652
 Philippolis 80
 Phillip 89
 Phitšong 397, 399
 PHOFU, RIMITON 623
 Phoi 196
 Phokwane 81, 478, 480
 Phokwane area 110
 Phôlôhôlô 419

PHÔLÔHÔLÔ 443
 Phôlôhôlô James 520
 PHÔLÔHÔLÔ 409 412, 413,
 425
 Phôlôhôlô, Walter 444
 Phuduhudy 69, 75, 182
 PHUDUHUTSWANA 69, 182
 Phuduhutšwe 78, 80
 Phuting 33,
 Pitšô 426, 435
 ba Pitšô 445
 Plaatsdrift Location 606,
 655, 656
 planned agriculture 127
 planning 310
 du Plessis 198
 plot holders 131, 132
 ploughing season, permis-
 sion 148
 Podile Mmalala 520
 Podise (Police) 341
 Pokwane 85, 416
 political system 152,
 202, 426
 Popong 302
 population census 95,
 349, 365, 382, 401,
 442, 476, 515, 531, 547,
 567, 577, 590, 597
 Porte, Father 157
 POWÊ, HANS 352
 protection of trees 125
 Pudumoe 23, 204, 222,
 274, 302
 Pulêlô 81
 Puleng-Sannie 464
 Pumpkins 148
 Q
 Qale 348
 Qoo 34, 348
 R
 RABODIGÊLÔ HENRY 182, 194,
 Rabodigêlô Kwane 231
 Rabodigêlô Thapama 231
 Rabokgosibotsile 302
 "Radigelasi" 193, 416
 Raido, Masinčo 375
 Raido, Moraijane 375
 railway 26
 rainfall 24
 Rajane 553
 Rajane Mothibi 556
 Rakgôrô 470
 Rakwana Leeuw 204
 Rakuna Andries 182, 196
 Ramagabane 190

Ramagageng Right Seê-
 pamere 446
 RaMere 426
 boo RaMohitlthe 426, 445
 Ramolale 248
 Rapai Saku 269
 baa Raphetlhu 582
 boo Raphukubjwe 611
 Rapopinyane 223
 Raseêtsele 194
 Rašope 182, 190, 204
 Rašope Singleboy R. Man-
 kuroane, , 206, 220, 233,
 235
 Ratšwenye 417, 425
 "Reebe" 55
 regiments 200, 201, 425
 Regional Authority 20,
 207
 Rhodes, C.J. 42
 Riet, Ben 338
 rinderpest 46
 roads 26
 Robinson, Sir, Hercules
 43
 rock engravings 51
 Roman Catholic Church
 157 169
 Rolong 202, 286, 470, 477,
 494, 497, 563, 574,
 618 629, 654
 Rolong ba ga Mokgôpa 202
 Rolong ba ga Sehuba 202
 Rolong boo Mabula 507
 Rolong boo Ratlou 38
 Rolong boo Ratshidi 38
 Roodepoort 115, 293, 294,
 302, 479
 Ross, Rev. 35, 156
 baRotse 33
 rotational grazing 127
 Rrakhee Andries 480
 ruins 52
 S
 Saku 78-82, 182, 186, 189,
 313
 ba ga Saku 318
 SAKU, BOBOSING 315
 SAKU, WAGGON BOITUMELO
 314
 SAKU, KINGSLEY KOBANE
 202, 204, 306, 316
 Samane 342
 Sanddrift 606
 Schmidtsdrift 6, 8, 145,
 182, 644, 650

Tlhaodi 411
 Tlhaping 59, 64
 Tlhaping бага Maidi 71
 Tlhaping ba ga Moduana 542
 Tlhaping ba ga Molehe 506, 527, 538, 542
 Tlhaping ba Phuduhudu 69
 Tlhaping boo Marumo 238
 Tlhaping chiefs' genealogy 69
 Tlhaping of Dibere 389
 Tlhaping of Galešewe 404
 Tlhaping, Rolong branch 67
 Tlhapisebele 198
 Tlhareseng 89
 Tlharo 59, 586, 618, 629, 654
 Tlhotlhomiso, Oarabile Jackson 594
 Tlôkwa 426, 637
 Tlôkwa in Basutoland 33
 Toi 202
 Tokonyane 480
 Tokwe, Mohatlha 202
 Tolman Dipalane 367
 totem 66
 Tôtô 46
 Tôtô Seitsang 594
 Townships 167
 traditional beliefs 154
 trees, protected 125
 Tribal Authority 18, 19, 205, 206
 tribal council 17
 trust farms bought 114
 Trutter Jan Pieter 32
 Tsatsing 33, 55, 642, 644
 Tselane 606
 Tselayakgothu 68
 Tsêtsêemang 196
 Tshabaesele, Moeng Solomon 340

Tshadikaa 554
 Tshainyane 486
 Tshano 194
 Tshipo 204, 215
 Tshite 425
 Tšholohêlô Andries 624
 Tšhukuduyane 202
 Tshwane 33
 Tshweneng 202

Tšhweng 64, 359, 470, 542, 563, 574, 586, 629
 Tshwenyane 31
 Tshidi 419
 Tsikang Samonne 284, 287
 Tsimane 536
 Tsimane, Jacob 536
 Tsite 417
 Tsitsi 89
 Tšokonyane 260
 Tšonkane 300
 Tšoseng 223, 298
 Tšotše Rramatlhware 238
 TSWALLE, NTOKO 579
 Tswana Territorial Authority 21
 Tuêlô 443
 tuberculosis 169
 Tweelingspan 450, 451
 Tweelingsvolk 59
 U
 Uil Bushman chief 34, 54
 V
 Vaalpens 34, 54
 Vaaltyn 206, 348
 Vaal-Harts-Canal 22
 Vaal - Harts irrigation scheme 113
 Vaal River 644
 van Niekerk, C.J. 41, 42
 Verona 115
 Vlakfontein 81
 Voorspoed 1
 Vryburg established 39
 Vygeboomvlakte 115, 293, 294
 W
 Waadintwa Robinson 648
 Warren General Charles 193, 416
 Warrenton district 4, 47
 water 126
 Waterboer Andries 54
 Waterboer, Maria 595
 Waterboer Nicolas 6
 Wikar 59
 wild vegetables 148
 witchcraft 11
 Witkoppies 576
 Witkraaltjies 364
 Witpan 336
 Woodfield 588
 workers 166
 X
 Xhosa 65, 332, 453, 586

Y

Yellow River 29

Z

Zendelingsfontein 62
 Zwartkoppies 173, 260



SCALE 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 MILES